LONGMANS' LATIN COURSE

GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES

PART I



C. Uprichard.

LONGMANS'

LATIN COURSE

PART I.

UP TO AND INCLUDING THE REGULAR VERB, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

WITH COPIOUS EXERCISES AND VOCABULARIES



NEW IMPRESSION

LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO. LTD.

39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON, E.C. 4

NEW YORK, TORONTO

CALCUTTA, BOMBAY AND MADRAS

1929

PREFACE.

THE aim of the *Latin Course*, of which this is the First Part, is to place before the pupil, in a simple and lucid manner, the essentials of Latin Grammar, together with a sufficient number of Exercises to impress the Grammar on the mind. Latin Courses do not as a rule provide sufficient practice in the earlier stages. An attempt is made to remedy this by giving many *vivâ voce* sections. These are not arranged haphazard, but will, if conscientiously used, serve to *teach* systematically, as well as *test* the subjects to which they refer. Teachers for the most part are agreed that verbs can only be mastered by long drill. Lists of Verb Forms are therefore given, in addition to the *vivâ voce* mentioned above. Practice in these will ensure that absolute readiness which is so necessary.

Made in Great Britain

CONTENTS.

PART I.

The References are to pages unless Rule (= R) is specified.

NOUNS. PAGE

Cases and **Inflexion** . 1, 5
Direct and **Indirect** Object 1
Declension of Nouns:—
1st Declension . . 2
2nd Declension . . 8, 9
3rd Declension . 22-30
I-stems . . 33-35
4th Declension . 43-44
2nd and 4th Declensions . . . 44
5th Declension . . 45
Parisyllabic and **Imparisyllabic** Nouns . 34
Rules for **Declension** . 9
Gender, Rules . . 123, 124
Common Gender . 22 *n.*

CASE.

Case after **Esse** . 15, 19
Ablative of **Agent**, etc. . 29
Ablative in **I.** . . . 35
Ablative of **Comparison** . 49
Accusative in **-im** . . 34
Dative with Verbs . 82, 111
Partitive Genitive . 56 *n.*

ADJECTIVES. PAGE

1st and 2nd Declension Adjectives . . 16-17
3rd Declension Adjectives . . . 37-39
Comparison of Adjectives 47
The **case** used after Comparatives . . . 49
Different meanings of Comparative and Superlative . . . 49
Irregular comparison 51-2
Plus 51
Translation of **more** and **most** . . . 49
Adjectives **used as Nouns** 41
Possessive Adjectives . 57
Translation of **his**, etc. 58-9

VERBS.

Transitive and **Intransitive** 14
Active and **Passive** 28, 106
Copula 15
Regular Verbs:—
1st Conjugation—
Active . . . 70
Passive . . . 98

	PAGE
2nd Conjugation—	
Active	72
Passive	100
3rd Conjugation—	
Active	74
Passive	102
4th Conjugation—	
Active	76
Passive	104
sum	94
dăre	63 *n.*
Parts of Verbs	60
Tenses—	
Perfect Tenses	62-3
Sequences of Tenses	66
Contractions	78
Subjunctive Mood	65
Imperative Mood	68
Participles	91, 107
Infinitive Mood	88-9
Impersonal Verbs	112
Verb Forms	117-119

PRONOUNS.

Personal	54, 55
Reflexive	55
It and they	56

ADVERBS.

Expressions of time	31, 36

PREPOSITIONS. PAGE

In	12
A, Ab	29
Ad	84
Motion towards	12
Time and place	31

CONJUNCTIONS.

que	78
Si with future	80
Cum	114

MISCELLANEOUS.

Order of Words	3, 93, 97, 109
Negation	10
Verb Forms	117-119
Appendices—	
I. **Pronunciation, quantity, accentuation**	120-2
II. **Irregularities of Declension**	122
III. **Gender—**	
A. **By meaning**	123
B. **By ending**	124
IV. **Parsing**	127
Vocabularies to the Exercises	129
General Vocabulary—	
I. Latin-English	143
II. English-Latin	150

Words in **Parentheses** ( ) are explanatory.

Words in **Square Brackets** [ ] are to be omitted.

THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.[1]

1. Latin nouns have different endings to show how they are used in sentences. Thus *mensa* means *table*, *mensae* means *of a table*, *mensārum*, *of tables*.

2. The part of the noun which remains the same in all the different forms is called the **stem**. Thus in *mensa*, *mensae*, *mensarum*, the stem is *mens-*.

3. The different forms of nouns obtained by altering the ending are called **cases**. There are six cases in Latin—Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, Ablative.

4. The **nominative case** is used when the noun is the **subject** of a verb.

To find the subject ask the question *Who?* or *What?* before the verb.

The boy runs. Who runs? The boy; therefore *boy* is the **subject** or **nominative case.**

The wind blows. What blows? The wind; therefore *wind* is the **subject** or **nominative case.**

5. The **vocative case** is used in addressing a person or thing.

O judge, be just. Judge is **vocative case,** because it is the name of the person addressed.

6. The **accusative case** is used when a noun is the **direct object.**[2]

---

[1] For **pronunciation** and **quantity** see Appendix I., p. 120.

[2] In the sentence, *The king gives money to the girl*, the word **money** is said to be the **direct object** of the verb because it directly receives the action of the verb. But **the girl** is also *indirectly* concerned in the action, and **girl** is said to be the **indirect object.**

To find the object ask the question *Whom?* or *What?* after the verb.

The king praises the soldier. Praises whom? The soldier; therefore *soldier* is **the direct object** or **accusative case.**

7. The **genitive case**[1] denotes the **possessor.** It corresponds to the possessive case in English, and also to a noun preceded by *of.*

The *boy's* dog, or the dog *of the boy.* Here *boy's* and *of a boy* show the possessor, and both words are in the **genitive case.**

8. The **dative case**[1] is used to denote the person *to whom* a thing is given or *for whom* a thing is done.

He gives a book *to the boy.* He makes a kite *for the boy.* Here *to the boy* and *for the boy* denote the **indirect object,** and they are in the **dative case.**

9. The **ablative case** has many uses. Its commonest use is to denote the **instrument by** which or **with** which anything is done.

He kills the bull *with a sword.* Here *with a sword* is in the **ablative case.**

10. There are five classes or declensions of nouns in Latin, distinguished from each other by the ending of the genitive singular. In the first declension the genitive singular ends in **-ae.**

11. First or **-A declension.** Singular number:—

Nom.	mens-**ă**[2]	*table* (subject)
Voc.	mens-**ă**	*O table*
Acc.	mens-**am**	*table* (object)
Gen.	mens-**ae**	*of a table* or *table's*
Dat.	mens-**ae**	*to* or *for a table*
Abl.	mens-**ā**	*by, with* or *from a table.*

[1] Other uses of this case will be shown later.

[2] Throughout this book the quantity (App. I., § 3, p. 120) is not marked when a vowel stands before two consonants nor in the case of a diphthong. As a rule too the short vowel standing before another vowel will not be indicated, though this is sometimes done.

Rule 1.—There are no words for *a*, *an* or *the* in Latin: *mensa* means *table* or *a table* or *the table.*

EXERCISE 1. Voc. 1, p. 129.

(1) Write out with English the singular of *căsă* and *agrĭcŏlă.*

(2) *Viva voce.* Say the accusative case and meaning of the following nouns:—

nauta	agricola	insula	casa
regina	aqua	terra	puella

(3) *Viva voce.* Say the Latin nominative and accusative of the following:—

the queen	water	the land	an island
a cottage	the farmer	a girl	the sailor

12. Before translating English into Latin or Latin into English it is necessary to find, by **parsing**, the case of each noun. Thus, *The sailor praises the cottage:* the verb is *praises*, and by asking the questions shown in §§ 4 and 6 we find that *sailor* is subject and *cottage* the object or accusative case. We translate therefore:—

The sailor praises the cottage, **Nauta casam laudat.**

Rule 2. Order of Words.—In arranging the words in a Latin sentence put the verb last.

EXERCISE 2. Voc. 2, p. 129.

A. Find the subject and object and then translate into Latin:—

(1) The queen praises the farmer.
(2) The queen praises the sailor.
(3) The sailor praises the water.
(4) The farmer praises the land.
(5) The queen loves the girl.
(6) The sailor loves water.
(7) The farmer loves the island.
(8) The girl loves the queen.

12 (*a*). Before translating the following, first **pick out the verb** and then find *from the ending* of each noun which word is the subject and which the object.

B. Translate into English :—

(1) Puella casam laudat.
(2) Regina puellam laudat.
(3) Nauta agricolam amat.
(4) Nauta insulam laudat.
(5) Puella nautam amat.
(6) Regina terram laudat.
(7) Regina nautam amat.
(8) Puella agricolam laudat.

3.—Of or **'s** is the sign of the **genitive case.**
To or **for** is the sign of the **dative case.**

The word in the **genitive case** is usually placed **before** the word denoting the thing possessed :—

agrĭcolae fĭlia, *the farmer's daughter.*

EXERCISE **3.** Voc. 3, p. 129.

Viva voce. Put into Latin :—

to the eagle	wisdom (acc.)	the sailor's
of the daughter	of the life	to the farmer
of the queen	to the daughter	of the cottage
of the rose	to the girl	arrow (nom.)

A. (1) The sailor gives a spear to the farmer.
(2) The queen praises the wing of the eagle.
(3) The sailor praises the daughter of the queen.
(4) The girl gives money to the farmer.
(5) The farmer's daughter shows the way.
(6) The sailor shows the way to the girl.
(7) The girl gives a rose to the queen.
(8) The queen's daughter praises the farmer's cottage.

B. (1) Regina pecuniam puellae dat.
(2) Nautae agricola rosam dat.
(3) Nautae filia agricolam laudat.
(4) Agricola aquilae alam laudat.
(5) Regina agricolae filiam laudat.
(6) Puella viam reginae monstrat.
(7) Agricola reginae aquam dat.
(8) Nautae filia reginam insulae laudat.

13. Singular and Plural of **mensa**:—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	mens-**ă**	*table*	mens-**ae**	*tables*
Voc.	mens-**ă**	*O table*	mens-**ae**	*O tables*
Acc.	mens-**am**	*table*	mens-**ās**	*tables*
Gen.	mens-**ae**	*of a table*	mens-**ārum**	*of tables*
Dat.	mens-**ae**	*to* or *for a table*	mens-**īs**	*to* or *for tables*
Abl.	mens-**ā**	*by, with* or *from a table*	mens-**īs**	*by, with* or *from tables*

For irregularities of declension see p. 122.

13 (*a*). **Gender.**—Nouns of the first declension are *feminine* except names of men, *e.g.*, **nauta**, *sailor*.

Exercise 4.

(1) Write out the plural of **rŏsa, nauta** and **hasta.**
(2) *Viva voce.* Put into Latin:—

to sailors	girls (nom.)	farmers (acc.)
of islands	of girls	to queens
of roses	of daughters	of wings
cottages (acc.)	to a daughter	roses (acc.)

A. 1. The queen praises the roses. 2. The sailor gives money to the farmers. 3. The farmer shows the way to the sailors. 4. The sailor praises the farmer's cottage. 5. The

sailor praises the cottages of the farmers. 6. The farmer gives roses to the daughter of the sailor.

B. 1. Agricola aquam nautis dat. 2. Agricola viam puellis monstrat. 3. Regina aquilarum alas laudat. 4. Puellarum sapientiam regina laudat. 5. Puella reginae casas monstrat. 6. Filia, O regina, nautarum hastas laudat.

14.

Singular.			Plural.		
ămăt (he, she *or* it)		*loves*	**ămant** (they)		*love*
laudăt	,,	*praises*	**laudant**	,,	*praise*
dăt	,,	*gives*	**dant**	,,	*give*
monstrăt	,,	*shows*	**monstrant**	,,	*show*
terrĕt	,,	*terrifies*	**terrent**	,,	*terrify*
hăbĕt	,,	*has*	**hăbent**	,,	*have*

Rule 4.—The verb must agree with its subject in number and person.

The girl **praises**	*Puella* **laudat**
The girls **praise**	*Puellae* **laudant**

Rule 5.—**By, with** or **from** is the sign of the **ablative case.**

Exercise 5.

Viva voce :—

(1)

the daughter loves	the spear terrifies	water terrifies
the daughters love	the spears terrify	queens praise
the sailor praises	the girl has	sailors have
sailors praise	the girls have	girls show

(2)

with spears	girls (acc.)	sailors (acc.)	with wings
with water	to girls	farmers (acc.)	by the spear
by wisdom	of wings	of farmers	O girls
of eagles	to sailors	with islands	of wisdom

Exercise 6. Voc. 6, p. 129.

(1) Decline, singular and plural, *spina* and *silva.*

(2) *Viva voce*:—

to the inhabitant	by a crown	to girls
to the inhabitants	by crowns	girls (acc.)
of the wood	with thorns	with water
of the woods	life (acc.)	farmers'
O dove	thorns (acc.)	of islands
O doves	woods (nom.)	wisdom (acc.)

*** *Before translating read over* § 12 (*a*), *and remember that a singular verb has a singular subject and a plural verb a plural subject* (R. 4).

A. 1. Aquila columbam terret. 2. Aquilae puellam terrent. 3. Regina puellam rosis ornat. 4. Incolae aquam nautae dant.[1] 5. Incola insulae puellis columbas dat. 6. Rosarum spinae reginam terrent. 7. Aquila alā columbam vulnerat. 8. Puellae casas rosis ornant. 9. Puellae rosis aquam dant. 10. Nautae hastam dat.[2] 11. Hastā nauta agricolam vulnerat. 12. Silvas nautae incolā monstrat.

B. 1. The farmer praises the woods. 2. The farmers praise the islands. 3. The thorns wound the girl. 4. The eagles terrify the queen. 5. The sailors praise the inhabitants. 6. Girls love roses. 7. The inhabitants give a crown to the queen. 8. The girl praises the life of the sailor. 9. The girls give money to the sailors. 10. The sailor praises the cottages of the farmers. 11. The sailor wounds the eagle with a spear. 12. The girls adorn the queen with roses. 13. [They][3] give roses to the queen of the island. 14. To the inhabitants of the island the sailor gives money. 15. The roses wound the queen with [their][3] thorns. 16. The farmer shows the woods to the

---

[1] Translate in two ways.

[2] Since **dat** is singular the **subject must be singular.** *Hastam* cannot be the subject because it is in the accusative case, and if *nautae* were the subject the verb would be plural. The **subject** therefore **is in the verb** (see Ex. 6, B. 13, and Rule 30, p. 61).

[3] Words in square brackets [ ] are to be omitted.

sailor. 17. The farmers give water to the sailors. 18. The inhabitants of the island terrify the queen.

15. The **second** or **-O declension**:—

The second declension consists of nouns whose nominative ends in **-us, -er** and **-um**, with the genitive in **-i**.

(1) Nouns in **-us** (masc.).

Nom.	dŏmĭn-**ŭs**	*lord*	dŏmĭn-**ī**	*lords*
Voc.	dŏmĭn-**ĕ**	*O lord*	dŏmĭn-**ī**	*O lords*
Acc.	dŏmĭn-**um**	*lord*	dŏmĭn-**ōs**	*lords*
Gen.	dŏmĭn-**ī**	*of a lord*	dŏmĭn-**ōrum**	*of lords*
Dat.	dŏmĭn-**ō**	*to* or *for a lord*	dŏmĭn-**īs**	*to* or *for lords*
Abl.	dŏmĭn-**ō**	*by, with* or *from a lord*	dŏmĭn-**īs**	*by, with* or *from lords*

16. Special cases:—

(*a*) The **vocative singular**[1] of proper nouns ending in **-ius** contracts **-ie** to **-i**, and the same rule applies to **fīlius**, *son*:—

Clāūdĭus (a Roman name)	**Claudī**, *O Claudius*
fīlĭus, *son*	**fīlī**, *O son*

(*b*) The vocative of **Dĕus**, *a God*, is the same as the nominative: **Deus**, *O God*.

(2) (*a*) Nouns in **-er** (masc.).

Nom.	ăgĕr	*field*	agr-**ī**	*fields*
Voc.	ăgĕr	*O field*	agr-**ī**	*O fields*
Acc.	agr-**um**	*field*	agr-**ōs**	*fields*
Gen	agr-**ī**	*of a field*	agr-**ōrum**	*of fields*
Dat.	agr-**ō**	*to* or *for a field*	agr-**īs**	*to* or *for fields*
Abl.	agr-**ō**	*by, with* or *from a field*	agr-**īs**	*by, with* or *from fields*

NOTE.—Nouns declined like **ager** drop the *e* of the nominative in all cases except the vocative.

Most nouns in **-er** are declined like *ager*.

---

[1] The vocative of other words in **-ius** was either not used or was regular.

(2) (*b*) Nouns in **-er** like **puer** (masc.).

Nom.	pŭĕr	*boy*	pŭĕr-**ī**	*boys*
Voc.	pŭĕr	*O boy*	pŭĕr-**ī**	*O boys*
Acc.	pŭĕr-**um**	*boy*	pŭĕr-**ōs**	*boys*
Gen.	pŭĕr-**ī**	*of a boy*	pŭĕr-**ōrum**	*of boys*
Dat.	pŭĕr-**ō**	*to* or *for a boy*	pŭĕr-**īs**	*to* or *for boys*
Abl.	pŭĕr-**ō**	*by, with* or *from a boy*	pŭĕr-**īs**	*by, with* or *from boys*

17.—The chief nouns declined like **puer**, *i.e.*, which keep the *e* of the nominative in all cases, are :—

gĕnĕr	gen.[1] **gĕnĕrī**	*son-in-law*
sŏcĕr	„ **sŏcĕrī**	*father-in-law*
signĭfer	„ **signĭfĕrī**	*standard-bearer*
vespĕr	„ **vespĕrī**	*evening*
lĭbĕri	„ **lĭbĕrōrum**	*children*

18. Vir, *a man*, is similarly declined :—

Sing. **vĭr, O vĭr, vĭrum, vĭrī, vĭrō, vĭrō**
Plur. **vĭrī, O vĭrī, vĭrōs, vĭrōrum, vĭrīs, vĭrīs**

(3) Nouns in **-um** (neut.).

Nom.	Regn-**um**	*a kingdom*	Regn-**ă**	*kingdoms*
Voc.	Regn-**um**	*O kingdom*	Regn-**ă**	*O kingdoms*
Acc.	Regn-**um**	*a kingdom*	Regn-**ă**	*kingdoms*
Gen.	Regn-**ī**	*of a kingdom*	Regn-**ōrum**	*of kingdoms*
Dat.	Regn-**ō**	*to* or *for a kingdom*	Regn-**īs**	*to* or *for kingdoms*
Abl.	Regn-**ō**	*by, with* or *from a kingdom*	Regn-**īs**	*by, with* or *from kingdoms*

19. Rules for the declension of nouns :—

(1) Except in nouns of the second declension in -us (like *dominus*) the vocative is always like the nominative.

(2) In neuter nouns the *nominative*, *vocative* and *accusative* are always the same.

---

[1] In Dictionaries it is customary to give the genitive of a word in addition to the nominative to show the stem of the word (§ 2).

(3) In neuter nouns the *nominative*, *vocative* and *accusative* plural always end in **-ă**.

19 (*a*). **Gender** of second declension nouns.—Nouns in **-us** and **-er** are **masculine**; nouns in **-um** are **neuter.**

Exceptions.—(*a*) **Dŏmus,** *house,* and **hŭmus,** *the ground,* are **feminine.**
(*b*) **Pĕlăgus,** *the sea,* **vīrus,** *poison,* and **vulgus,** *the common people,* are **neuter.**

Rule 6.—When an English verb is made **negative** it is often broken up into two words. *The farmer* **praises** *the land. The farmer* **does** *not* **praise** *the land.* In translating such sentences remember that the verb **does praise** is represented in Latin by one word. The sentence really means *the farmer* **praises not** *the land.*

Agrĭcolă terram **nōn laudăt.**

Exercise 7.

Learn the declension of *dominus,* p. 8, and vocabulary, p. 130.

(1) Write out, singular and plural, the declension of *carrus, amīcus* and *equus.*

(2) *Viva voce* :—

of the cart	of a village	to a lamb	by a bull
of the friend	village (acc.)	of a lamb	by the wind
to the friend	with a garden	of a wolf	wind (acc.)
friends (acc.)	garden (acc.)	of a bull	to a horse
horses (acc.)	of winds	wolves (nom.)	lambs (nom.)
of horses	of friends	to wolves	friends (nom.)
to friends	of bulls	by carts	villages (acc.)
by winds	bulls (acc.)	of carts	gardens (acc.)

A. 1. Taurus agnos vulnerat. 2. Amicus hortos habet. 3. Amici taurus equum terret. 4. Venti lupos non terrent. 5. Amici carros laudat. 6. Nauta agnos et equos laudat. 7. Puella aquam agno dat. 8. Filia hortum domino monstrat. 9. Agni lupos non amant. 10. Agricola aquam tauris dat.

11. Dominus vicorum equos laudat. 12. Hortis insulam agricolae ornant.

B. 1. The lord has carts and horses. 2. The wind terrifies the bull. 3. The wolf terrifies the lamb. 4. The wolves terrify the lambs. 5. The friend's horse wounds the bull. 6. The friends praise the lord's lambs. 7. [They] give a horse to the friend. 8. The lamb does not like the wolf. 9. The island, O friend, has villages. 10. The sailors terrify the bulls with a spear.

Exercise 8.

Learn §§ 15-16.

(1) Write out singular and plural of *filius*, and plural only of *gladius* and *nuntius*.

(2) *Viva voce*:—

with a sword	of the gods	of the Romans	to Claudius
with swords	of the sons	of the son	messengers (acc.)
messenger (acc.)	to the messenger	O son	Gauls (nom.)
sons (nom.)	to the gods	O Claudius	of the Gauls.

A. 1. Claudius coronam filio dat. 2. Galli Romanos non laudant. 3. Nuntio gladium dominus dat. 4. Romanorum nuntii Gallos terrent. 5. Claudius gladios et hastas nuntiis dat. 6. Filii nautae taurum gladiis terrent. 7. Nuntii hortos domini laudant. 8. O fili, deus sapientiam Claudio dat. 9. Domini filii tauros habent. 10. Romani hortorum deum rosis ornant.

B. 1. The farmer gives a sword to [his] son. 2. The lord's sword terrifies the messengers. 3. The messenger of the Romans praises Claudius. 4. The son terrifies the messengers with a sword. 5. The friends of Claudius terrify the Gauls with swords. 6. The swords of the Romans terrify the Gauls. 7. O Claudius, [thy] messenger does not terrify the Gauls. 8. They give swords and horses to the messengers. 9. The gods,

O son, give wisdom to the Romans. 10. The friends of the Gauls wound the Romans with swords.

Rule 7.—The Latin preposition **in** means both *in* and *into*.

In meaning *in* is followed by the **ablative.**[1]

In meaning *into* is followed by the **accusative.**[1]

The farmer is **in the field**	Agricola **in agro** est
The farmer runs **into the field**	Agricola **in agrum** currit

Exercise 9.

(1) Write out singular and plural of *cultcr*, *faber*.

(2) *Viva voce* :—

knife (acc.)	with knives	to a servant	of a book
books (acc.)	to a workman	servant (acc.)	with a book
of books	of a workman	wild boars (acc.)	to workmen
with a knife	of workmen	of fields	O workman
in a garden	in an island	into a cottage	in the village
into a garden	into an island	into the water	into the wood

A. 1. In vico sunt fabri. 2. Fabri filius agros laudat. 3. Faber cultrum ministro dat. 4. Fabrorum libros laudant.[2] 5. Puella in casam currit. 6. Apri in silvam currunt. 7. Aper nunc in horto est. 8. Minister fabros cultro terret. 9. Dominus agros ministro dat. 10. Tauri in vicum currunt.

B. 1. The workmen are in the field. 2. The servant gives a knife to the workman. 3. The servants terrify the workman with a knife. 4. The girl praises the books of the lord. 5. The workmen terrify the wild-boars with knives. 6. The wild-boars run into the wood. 7. The lord of the fields praises the workman. 8. The servant gives the knife to the son. 9. The sons of the workman run into the wood. 10. The table is in the cottage.

---

[1] Another way of putting this is: **In** meaning **rest in a place** takes the **ablative**; **in** meaning **motion towards a place** takes the **accusative.**

The pupil will notice later on that whenever a preposition implies motion towards, it requires the accusative.

[2] See note 2, p. 7.

Exercise 10.

Learn *puer* and §§ 17, 18, p. 9.

(1) Write out singular and plural of *socer*, and plural only of *lĭbĕri*.

(2) *Viva voce :—*

to the son-in-law	of children	children (acc.)
of the father-in-law	of the standard-bearer	son-in-law (acc.)
sons-in-law (acc.)	the fathers-in-law (acc.)	men (nom.)
to children	evening (acc.)	of sons-in-law
of men	books (nom.)	in a field
to men	children (acc.)	in fields
men (acc.)	to the standard-bearer	into the village
to a man	standard-bearers (acc.)	into the garden

A. 1. Vir generum laudat. 2. Viri liberos laudant. 3. Socer virum amat. 4. Signifero pecuniam dant. 5. Viri liberos socer amat. 6. Liberi viris libros dant. 7. Viro signifer hastam dat. 8. Liberorum cultros laudant. 9. Signifero vir hastam dat. 10. Signiferum hastā Galli terrent. 11. Viri in agro sunt. 12. Viri in hortum soceri currunt. 13. Romanorum signiferi sunt in vico. 14. O fili, Romani Gallos terrent. 15. Viri apros cultris vulnerant. 16. Domini tauri in silvam currunt.

B. 1. The men give knives to the boys. 2. The son-in-law praises the standard-bearers. 3. The sons of the men run into the garden. 4. The children are now in the garden. 5. The boy wounds the lamb with a knife. 6. [He] gives a garden to the servant's son-in-law. 7. The owner (= lord) of the gardens has knives. 8. Boys do not praise books. 9. The father-in-law praises the standard-bearer. 10. The girls give roses to the son-in-law. 11. The sons of the man terrify the workmen with knives. 12. The children praise the men's books.

Exercise 11.

Learn *regnum*, p. 9, and § 19, p. 9.

(1) Write out *dōnum* and *praemĭum*, singular and plural.

(2) *Viva voce* :—

of gold	by danger	to temples	camp (acc.)
gifts	by dangers	in a temple	of shields
of gifts	rewards	in the town	by shields
towns	temples	in the camp	with gold

A. 1. Romani scuta habent. 2. Oppidum hortos habet. 3. Agricola aurum templo dat. 4. Puer domini dona laudat. 5. Praemia puero dant. 6. Signifer hastam habet; dominus scutum (habet). 7. Poetae in templo sunt. 8. Dominus puerum donis delectat. 9. Romani castra Gallorum non laudant. 10. Viri sunt in castris Romanorum. 11. Signifer in castra Romanorum currit. 12. Pericula viae puellam terrent. 13. Puellae templa auro ornant. 14. Sunt templa in oppidis. 15. Galli signiferi arma laudant. 16. Scuta Romanorum fabros delectant.

B. 1. The lord gives silver to the boy. 2. The woman gives rewards to the boys. 3. The temples are in the town. 4. The farmers praise the temples of the town. 5. The arms are in the camp. 6. The women give arms to the boys. 7. The poet's book praises the gifts of the lord. 8. The lord delights the servant with gold. 9. The children of the son-in-law run into the temple. 10. The towns have temples and gardens. 11. The island has towns and villages. 12. Gold delights men; roses [delight] children. 13. The farmer delights [his] daughter with gifts. 14. The girls adorn the temples with arms. 15. The standard-bearer gives [his] shield to the temple. 16. Arms, O son, terrify children.

20. (*a*) A **transitive verb** denotes an action which passes over from the **doer**, *i.e.*, the **subject**, to some person or thing, *i.e.*, the **direct object**.

(*b*) An **intransitive verb** denotes an action which does not pass over from the doer to any other person or thing, *i.e.*, it has **no direct object**.

Transitive: *The boy* **strikes** *the table.* **Intransitive**: *Birds* **fly.**

(*c*) In the sentence **Britain is an island**, the verb *is* does not imply an action at all. It **simply couples** the two words *Britain* and *island* (which mean the same thing). As *island* completes the meaning of *Britain* by explaining what it is, it is often called the **complement** and the coupling verb *is* is called the **copula.**

Nouns or pronouns coupled by *is*, *are*, etc., **are always in the same case.**

Rule 8.—The noun standing after the verb **is** or **are** is put in the **nominative case.** See Rule 51, p. 96.

Britain is an **island** Britannia est **insula**

Exercise 12.

A. 1. Rhenus est fluvius. 2. Claudius est reginae filius. 3. Neptunus est deus pelagi. 4. Dona causa laetitiae sunt. 5. Agnus est praeda luporum. 6. Hasta est donum domini. 7. Bella sunt semper mala. 8. Domini donum est corona. 9. Germania est patria poetarum. 10. Insulae sunt patria fabrorum. 11. Saepe aurum est causa malorum. 12. In silvis sunt columbae et aquilae. 13. Dat scuta et hastas viris. 14. Romani nuntios habent. 15. O fili, sapientia est donum deorum. 16. In Britannia sunt fluvii et silvae.

B. 1. The land is an island. 2. The workmen are slaves. 3. The Rhine is a river of Germany. 4. Money is often the cause of joy. 5. Lambs are always the cause of joy to children. 6. Diana is the goddess of the woods. 7. Neptune is the god of rivers. 8. Gold is often the cause of anger. 9. The anger of the goddess terrifies the inhabitants of the land. 10. The lord of the slaves is a poet. 11. The island is the fatherland of poets. 12. The inhabitants of the islands are sailors. 13. The men are the messengers of the Romans. 14. War is always an evil to men. 15. Claudius is the messenger of the Gauls. 16. O Claudius, the gift of the lord is a sword. 17. The land has woods and rivers. 18. In the island are wolves and lambs. 19. The lambs run into the woods. 20. The wolves wound the lambs. 21. The lambs are the prey of the wolves.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

21. Latin adjectives are declined just like Latin nouns, and they have different forms to show gender. Many adjectives end in **-us** for masculine, **-a** for feminine, **-um** for neuter. Thus the Latin for *good* is **bŏnus** (masc.), **bŏna** (fem.), **bŏnum** (neut.).

Masculines like *bonus* are declined like *dominus*, feminines like *bona* are declined like *mensa*, neuters like *bonum* are declined like *regnum*.

1. Bŏnus, bŏna, bŏnum, *good*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	bŏn-**us**	bŏn-**ă**	bŏn-**um**	bŏn-**ī**	bŏn-**ae**	bŏn-**ă**
Voc.	bŏn-**ĕ**	bŏn-**ă**	bŏn-**um**	bŏn-**ī**	bŏn-**ae**	bŏn-**ă**
Acc.	bŏn-**um**	bŏn-**am**	bŏn-**um**	bŏn-**ōs**	bŏn-**ās**	bŏn-**ă**
Gen.	bŏn-**ī**	bŏn-**ae**	bŏn-**ī**	bŏn-**ōrum**	bŏn-**ārum**	bŏn-**ōrum**
Dat.	bŏn-**ō**	bŏn-**ae**	bŏn-**ō**	bŏn-**īs**	bŏn-**īs**	bŏn-**īs**
Abl.	bŏn-**ō**	bŏn-**ā**	bŏn-**ō**	bŏn-**īs**	bŏn-**īs**	bŏn-**īs**

21 (*a*). Some other adjectives have the masculine in **-er**, feminine in **-a**, neuter in **-um**. Thus *black* = **nĭger** (masc.), **nĭgra** (fem.), **nĭgrum** (neut.).

The only difference between these adjectives and words like *bonus* is that the masculine *nĭger* is declined like *ager*.

2. Nĭger, nigra, nigrum, *black*.

	SINGULAR.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	nĭger	nigr-**ă**	nigr-**um**
Acc.	nigr-**um**	nigr-**am**	nigr-**um**
Gen.	nigr-**ī**	nigr-**ae**	nigr-**ī**
Dat.	nigr-**ō**	nigr-**ae**	nigr-**ō**
Abl.	nigr-**ō**	nigr-**ā**	nigr-**ō**
	PLURAL.		
N. and V.	nigr-**ī**	nigr-**ae**	nigr-**ă**
Acc.	nigr-**ōs**	nigr-**ās**	nigr-**ă**
Gen.	nigr-**ōrum**	nigr-**ārum**	nigr-**ōrum**
Dat.	nigr-**īs**	nigr-**īs**	nigr-**īs**
Abl.	nigr-**īs**	nigr-**īs**	nigr-**īs**

21 (*b*). A few adjectives ending in **-er** keep the *e* throughout. The masculine of such adjectives is declined like *puer*.

3. Tĕnĕr, tĕnĕră, tĕnĕrum, *tender.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	tĕnĕr	tĕnĕr-**ă**	tĕnĕr-**um**
Acc.	tĕnĕr-**um**	tĕnĕr-**am**	tĕnĕr-**um**
Gen.	tĕnĕr-**ī**	tĕnĕr-**ae**	tĕnĕr-**ī**
Dat.	tĕnĕr-**ō**	tĕnĕr-**ae**	tĕnĕr-**ō**
Abl.	tĕnĕr-**ō**	tĕnĕr-**ā**	tĕnĕr-**ō**

PLURAL.

N. and V.	tĕnĕr-**ī**	tĕnĕr-**ae**	tĕnĕr-**ă**
Acc.	tĕnĕr-**ōs**	tĕnĕr-**ās**	tĕnĕr-**ă**
Gen.	tĕnĕr-**ōrum**	tĕnĕr-**ārum**	tĕnĕr-**ōrum**
Dat.	tĕnĕr-**īs**	tĕnĕr-**īs**	tĕnĕr-**īs**
Abl.	tĕnĕr-**īs**	tĕnĕr-**īs**	tĕnĕr-**īs**

22. Most adjectives in **-er** are like *niger* and omit the *e*. The following are like *tener* and keep the *e* :—

Aspĕr, aspĕra, aspĕrum	*rough*
Lībĕr, lībĕra, lībĕrum	*free*
Mĭsĕr, mĭsĕra mĭsĕrum	*wretched*
Prospĕr, prospĕra, prospĕrum	*prosperous*
Tĕnĕr, tĕnĕra, tĕnĕrum	*tender*

23. Examples of nouns and adjectives declined together :—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Masc.		*Masc.*	
Nom.	**bŏnus**	**dŏmĭnus**	**bŏnī**	**dŏmĭnī**
Voc.	**bŏnĕ**	**dŏmĭnĕ**	**bŏnī**	**dŏmĭnī**
Acc.	**bŏnum**	**dŏmĭnum**	**bŏnōs**	**dŏmĭnōs**
Gen.	**bŏnī**	**dŏmĭnī**	**bŏnōrum**	**dŏmĭnōrum**
Dat.	**bŏnō**	**dŏmĭnō**	**bŏnīs**	**dŏmĭnīs**
Abl.	**bŏnō**	**dŏmĭnō**	**bŏnīs**	**dŏmĭnīs**

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Fem.		*Fem.*	
Nom.	**bŏnă**	**rēgīnă**	**bŏnae**	**rēgīnae**
Voc.	**bŏnă**	**rēgīnă**	**bŏnae**	**rēgīnae**
Acc.	**bŏnam**	**rēgīnam**	**bŏnās**	**rēgīnās**
Gen	**bŏnae**	**rēgīnae**	**bŏnārum**	**rēgīnārum**
Dat.	**bŏnae**	**rēgīnae**	**bŏnīs**	**rēgīnīs**
Abl.	**bŏnā**	**rēgīnā**	**bŏnīs**	**rēgīnīs**
	Neut.		*Neut*	
Nom.	**bŏnum**	**regnum**	**bŏnă**	**regnă**
Voc.	**bŏnum**	**regnum**	**bŏnă**	**regnă**
Acc.	**bŏnum**	**regnum**	**bŏnă**	**regnă**
Gen.	**bŏnī**	**regnī**	**bŏnōrum**	**regnōrum**
Dat.	**bŏnō**	**regnō**	**bŏnīs**	**regnīs**
Abl.	**bŏnō**	**regnō**	**bŏnīs**	**regnīs**

24. In declining together words like *famous poet* it must be remembered that, as *poēta* is masculine, we must write *clārus poēta*, *clarus* being declined like *bonus*, *poēta* like *mensa*, thus :—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	**clārus**	**poētă**	**clārī**	**poētae**
Voc.	**clārĕ**	**poētă**	**clārī**	**poētae**
Acc.	**clārum**	**poētam**	**clārōs**	**poētās**
Gen.	**clārī**	**poētae**	**clārōrum**	**poētārum**
Dat.	**clārō**	**poētae**	**clārīs**	**poētīs**
Abl.	**clārō**	**poētā**	**clārīs**	**poētīs**

Rule 9.—The adjective agrees with its noun in number, gender and case. Thus *puellam bonam*, *domino bono*, *poeta claro*.

Rule 10.—The **adjective** in Latin is frequently **placed after the noun.**

A small cottage, **Căsa parva.**

Exercise 13.

Learn *bonus*, p. 16, and Vocab. 13, p. 131.

A. Give the nominative and accusative of:—

good queen	sharp spear	large kingdom	wild eagle
white rose	long spear	famous man	timid boy
white horse	large garden	famous kingdom	timid girl
little cottage	large cottage	wild horse	timid poet

B. Give nominative and genitive of:—

good boy	timid messenger	famous inhabitant	strong horse
good land	timid queen	famous god	strong workman
little boy	timid farmer	famous workman	great danger
little cottage	pleasing rose	pleasing gift	great town

C. Give nominative and accusative of:—

famous queens	long spears	small villages	strong shields
famous sailors	long islands	small temples	strong towns
many books	long shields	small gifts	sharp swords
many dangers	long knives	small fields	sharp spears

Exercise 14.

Rule 11.—When we say *the island is small*, the adjective *small* tells what sort of island just as if we said *a small island*, and it must agree with *island* (§ 20 (*c*)).

The island is small, **Insula parva est**

The islands are small, **Insulae parvae sunt**

A. 1. Hasta longa est. 2. Hastae Gallorum longae sunt. 3. Poetae clari sunt. 4. Equi validi sunt. 5. Regina bona est. 6. Lupi sunt feri. 7. Templum est magnum. 8. Templa sunt magna. 9. Pueri sunt timidi. 10. Liberi Claudii timidi sunt.

B. 1. The wall is high. 2. The slaves are timid. 3. The roses are white. 4. The sword is sharp. 5. The boy is timid. 6. The workman is timid. 7. The workmen are strong. 8. The dove is white. 9. The wings of the eagle are strong. 10. The knife of the workman is strong

Exercise 15.

Decline in full *ala alba, ager latus* and *templum longum.*

A. 1. Bona regina pueros validos laudat. 2. Agricola cultrum acutum servo dat. 3. Servus templa puellae parvae monstrat. 4. Rosae albae puellis sunt gratae. 5. Nuntius pueros timidos terret. 6. Galli nuntium Romanorum terrent. 7. Puellae feminam rosis albis delectant. 8. Servum acuta hasta vir terret. 9. Multa templa sunt in insula. 10. Insulae fluvii sunt multi et longi. 11. Tauri feri in agrum currunt. 12. Agricola multa dona nuntiis dat.

B. 1. The farmer has many horses. 2. The girls adorn the cottage with white roses. 3. Roses have sharp thorns. 4. The shields of the famous Romans are long. 5. Many bulls terrify the little boy. 6. The great queen gives wide fields to the farmer. 7. The long island has large temples. 8. The famous town has many inhabitants. 9. They give shields and swords to the strong workman. 10. The Gauls terrify the Romans with [their] long spears. 11. The sons of the timid women run into the temple. 12. The island has broad rivers and many fields.

Exercise 16.

Learn *nĭger*, p. 16.

(1) Give nominative and accusative of :—

sick woman	thin lambs	red rose	sacred fields
sick boy	our garden	beautiful gardens	sacred temple
sick slave	our friends	beautiful temples	sacred garden
thin lamb	beautiful rose	beautiful temple	sacred island

(2) Put into Latin :—

with beautiful roses	of sick girls	of our island
to our friends	of black horses	of black eagles
to our friend	to black horses	of sacred temples
of the sick girl	our island (acc.)	sacred gifts (acc.)

A. 1. Puella spinas rubras rosae timet. 2. Insula longa templa sacra habet. 3. Aegri agricolae lupos macros timent.

4. In silvis sunt templa nostri Dei. 5. Macri agni incolas vici timent. 6. Agricolae servi nigri sunt. 7. Pueros parvos nauta validus cultro terret. 8. Regina nostra aurum templis sacris dat. 9. Filia tua, serve timide, spinas rosarum rubrarum timet. 10. Tauri vestri puellas pulchras vulnerant.

B. 1. The red rose has many thorns. 2. Little boys fear sick wolves. 3. The black slave shows the temple to the beautiful queen. 4. The master (= lord) of the black slaves gives money to the temples. 5. Wolves always fear sharp knives. 6. The walls of the sacred gardens are high. 7. The little girl has a beautiful dove. 8. The woman gives a beautiful dove to the little girl. 9. Your swords terrify our children. 10. Red roses always have sharp thorns. 11. The girls adorn our queen with beautiful roses. 12. The timid inhabitant shows the way to the sick sailor.

Exercise 17.

Learn *tener*, p. 17, and §§ 22, 23

(1) Give nominative and accusative of :—

a tender boy	a free inhabitant	a rough way	a famous war
tender boys	free inhabitants	a false friend	free sailors
a wretched war	a prosperous town	beautiful roses	our plans
wretched wars	prosperous towns	a tender queen	great rewards

(2) Put into Latin :—

to a prosperous town	to beautiful temples	of wretched women
O wretched slave	O wretched inhabitants	to a tender friend
of black horses	by famous wars	with rough words
of a beautiful island	to free workmen	of the sick sailor

A. 1. Regina multos libros tenerae filiae dat. 2. Verba lupi avidi agnum tenerum terrent. 3. Bella prosperis oppidis non grata sunt. 4. In pelago sunt multae insulae. 5. Miseri incolae in silvam currunt. 6. Lupus teneros agnos terret. 7. Nuntius Romanorum incolis liberis gladios dat. 8. In

Britannia sunt multae silvae. 9. Prosperi incolae insulae Deos laudant. 10. Tua verba, parve fili, tenerum agnum terrent.

B. 1. The tender queen gives money to the wretched girls. 2. The little lambs fear the fierce (*asper*) wolf. 3. The farmers are inhabitants of a prosperous land. 4. Rough words terrify the tender minds of children. 5. The towns of Britain are famous. 6. The beautiful woods are sacred to our god. 7. The island has rough fields. 8. The plans of the wretched Gauls are known to the Romans. 9. The men of the island wound the sacred horses of the god with knives. 10. O wretched queen, the children fear [thy] angry words.

25. The third declension, *i.e.*, consonant or -I declension.

The third declension consists of nouns with stems ending in some consonant or in -i.

(1) *Nouns with stems ending in a* **guttural** *or throat letter, i.e.,* **c** *or* **g**.

For gender see Appendix, p. 124.

	dux (masc.), *leader*	**iūdex** (com.[1]), *judge*	**rex** (masc.), *king*
		SINGULAR.	
N. and V.	dux	iūdex	rex
Acc.	dŭc-**em**	iudĭc-**em**	rēg-**em**
Gen.	dŭc-**ĭs**	iudĭc-**ĭs**	rēg-**ĭs**
Dat.	dŭc-**ī**	iudĭc-**ī**	rēg-**ī**
Abl.	dŭc-**ĕ**	iudĭc-**ĕ**	rēg-**ĕ**
		PLURAL.	
N. and V.	dŭc-**ēs**	iudĭc-**ēs**	rēg-**ēs**
Acc.	dŭc-**ēs**	iudĭc-**ēs**	rēg-**ēs**
Gen.	dŭc-**um**	iudĭc-**um**	rēg-**um**
Dat.	dŭc-**ĭbus**	iudĭc-**ĭbus**	rēg-**ĭbus**
Abl.	dŭc-**ĭbus**	iudĭc-**ĭbus**	rēg-**ĭbus**

[1] Some words can be applied to males or females. These are said to be of common gender. Such are *iūdex, cānis, cīvis*, etc. In exercises, however, words of common gender should be made masculine unless there is some special reason for making them feminine.

Exercise 18.

Viva voce :—

by peace	to the flock	by voices	a nut (acc.)
voices	of flocks	of light	of nuts
of voices	snow (acc.)	a flock (acc.)	with a nut
with light	peace (acc.)	by snow	voices (acc.)

white snow[1]	of a long peace	a small light (acc.)
of white snow	many nuts (acc.)	of timid judges
to the good king	many kings (acc.)	O strong leader
to the long peace	many voices (nom.)	of our leaders

A. 1. Luna nautis lucem dat. 2. Romanorum leges iudicibus notae sunt. 3. Puer voce iudicis terretur. 4. In agris nunc est nix. 5. Lunae luce nauta insulam videt. 6. Leges sunt necessariae ducibus et regibus. 7. Iudici bonae leges iucundae sunt. 8. Romani pacem Gallis dant. 9. Cur regem clarum iudex timet? 10. Pax longa incolas insulae delectat. 11. Ira iudicum captivis perniciosa est. 12. In castris sunt Romanorum duces. 13. Pueri et puellae nuces amant. 14. Voce regis magni servi miseri terrentur.

B. 1. Wars are pleasant to leaders. 2. The leader's sword does not frighten the judge. 3. The girl fears the snow. 4. The voices of our leaders praise the long peace. 5. The king gives the booty to the leaders. 6. The captives are terrified by the voice of the leader. 7. Anger is destructive to peace. 8. The farmers praise the light of the moon. 9. The moon is sacred to Diana. 10. Why do judges praise good laws? 11. The kings of the Romans are famous. 12. The good boy is not terrified by laws.

[1] See § 27, p. 32.

(2) *Nouns with stems ending in* **dentals**, *i.e., teeth letters,* **d** *and* **t.**

For gender see Appendix, p. 124.

	pēs (masc.), *foot*	**mīlĕs** (masc.), *soldier*	**aetās** (fem.), *age*
	SINGULAR.		
N. and V.	pēs	mīlĕs	aetās
Acc.	pĕd-**em**	mīlĭt-**em**	aetāt-**em**
Gen.	pĕd-**ĭs**	mīlĭt-**ĭs**	aetāt-**ĭs**
Dat.	pĕd-ī	mīlĭt-ī	aetāt-ī
Abl.	pĕd-ĕ	mīlĭt-ĕ	aetāt-ĕ
	PLURAL.		
N. and V.	pĕd-**ēs**	mīlĭt-**ēs**	aetāt-**ēs**
Acc.	pĕd-**ēs**	mīlĭt-**ēs**	aetāt-**ēs**
Gen.	pĕd-**um**	mīlĭt-**um**	aetāt-**um**
Dat.	pĕd-**ĭbus**	mīlĭt-**ĭbus**	aetāt-**ĭbus**
Abl.	pĕd-**ĭbus**	mīlĭt-**ĭbus**	aetāt-**ĭbus**

(3) *Nouns with stems ending in* **labials**, *i.e., lip letters,* **b, p, m.**

For gender see Appendix, p. 125.

	trabs (fem.), *beam*	**princeps** (masc.), *chief*	**hĭems** (fem.), *winter*
	SINGULAR.		
N. and V.	trabs	princeps	hiems
Acc.	trăb-**em**	princĭp-**em**	hiĕm-**em**
Gen.	trăb-**ĭs**	princĭp-**ĭs**	hiĕm-**ĭs**
Dat.	trăb-ī	princĭp-ī	hiĕm-ī
Abl.	trăb-ĕ	princĭp-ĕ	hiĕm-ĕ
	PLURAL.		
N. and V.	trăb-**ēs**	princĭp-**ēs**	hiĕm-**ēs**
Acc.	trăb-**ēs**	princĭp-**ēs**	hiĕm-**ēs**
Gen.	trăb-**um**	princĭp-**um**	hiĕm-**um**
Dat.	trăb-**ĭbus**	princĭp-**ĭbus**	hiĕm-**ĭbus**
Abl.	trăb-**ĭbus**	princĭp-**ĭbus**	hiĕm-**ĭbus**

Exercise 19.

Viva voce:—

to the companion	horse-soldier (acc.)	of hostages
to the companions	foot-soldier (acc.)	to states
of the guardian	of praise	to foot-soldiers
of the guardians	the hostage (acc.)	by praise

to the famous chief	timid hostages (nom.)	of angry chiefs
the famous chief (acc.)	timid hostages (acc.)	the long winter (acc.)
of a good companion	of a great state	to many companions
of a long beam	of great states	of our chief

A. 1. Princeps equitem laudat. 2. Equiti rex equum dat. 3. Ducis vox obsidem terret. 4. Civitati dux multas leges dat. 5. Obsidum custodes sunt in silva. 6. Validi equites hiemem non timent. 7. Magnā celeritate pedites in silvam currunt. 8. Principibus leges sunt necessariae. 9. Quis timido militi laudem dat? 10. Princeps obsides in silvam mittit. 11. Faber longas trabes habet. 12. Pedites custodes templi gladio vulnerant.

B. 1. The hostages run into the temple. 2. Who praises the long winter? 3. Winter is not always pleasant to foot-soldiers. 4. The voice of the hostage is not pleasant to the leaders. 5. To the guardian of the temple the chiefs give gold. 6. The states have good laws. 7. The companions of the hostages fear the horse-soldier. 8. The winter terrifies the sick soldier. 9. The horses wound the guardians with [their] feet. 10. The horse-soldiers send the hostages into the wood with great speed. 11. The arms of the foot-soldiers are swords and shields. 12. The kings of the Gauls give hostages to the Romans.

(4) *Nouns with stems ending in* **l, r, s.**

For gender, see Appendix, p. 124.

	consul (masc.), *consul*	**victor** (masc.), *conqueror*	**flōs** (masc.), *flower*
	SINGULAR.		
N. and V.	consŭl	victor	flōs
Acc.	consŭl-**em**	victōr-**em**	flōr-**em**
Gen.	consŭl-**ĭs**	victōr-**ĭs**	flōr-**ĭs**
Dat.	consŭl-**ī**	victōr-**ī**	flōr-**ī**
Abl.	consŭl-**ĕ**	victōr-**ĕ**	flōr-**ĕ**
	PLURAL.		
N. and V.	consŭl-**ēs**	victōr-**ēs**	flōr-**ēs**
Acc.	consŭl-**ēs**	victōr-**ēs**	flōr-**ēs**
Gen.	consŭl-**um**	victōr-**um**	flōr-**um**
Dat.	consŭl-**ĭbus**	victōr-**ĭbus**	flōr-**ĭbus**
Abl.	consŭl-**ĭbus**	victōr-**ĭbus**	flōr-**ĭbus**

	māter (fem.), *mother*	**anser** (masc.), *goose*
	SINGULAR	
N. and V.	māter	anser
Acc.	māt**r-em**	anser-**em**
Gen.	māt**r-ĭs**	anser-**ĭs**
Dat.	māt**r-ī**	anser-**ī**
Abl.	māt**r-ĕ**	anser-**ĕ**
	PLURAL.	
N. and V.	māt**r-ēs**	anser-**ēs**
Acc.	māt**r-ēs**	anser-**ēs**
Gen.	māt**r-um**	anser-**um**
Dat.	māt**r-ĭbus**	anser-**ĭbus**
Abl.	māt**r-ĭbus**	anser-**ĭbus**

Exercise 20.

Rule 12.—*There are boys in the garden* is merely another way of saying *Boys are in the garden.* In such expressions *there*[1] does not denote *place*, and it is omitted in Latin.

(There) *are boys in the garden*, **In horto sunt pueri.**

Viva voce :—

of the sun	to the father	by labour	to trees
sun (acc.)	to the fathers	by the sun	by colours
colours	to Cæsar	labours (acc.)	to the sun
of colours	Cæsar (acc.)	of labours	of mothers

many flowers	of the red flower	a famous general
of many flowers	to the sick mother	beautiful colours
by a beautiful flower	of the good father	to thy sister
to the famous conqueror	many labours	with a great shout

A 1. Consul victorem laudat. 2. Victori rex coronam dat. 3. Galli Cæsarem non amant. 4. Tunc Cæsar in Gallia erat. 5. Odor florum matrem delectat. 6. In agro sunt arbores et flores. 7. Imperator militum labores laudat. 8. Nostrarum sororum hortus multos flores habet. 9. Puer florem sorori aegrae dat. 10. Lux solis patrem aegrum delectat. 11. In agris sunt anseres et equi. 12. In Italia sunt multa oppida. 13. Labores puerorum patribus iucundi sunt. 14. Mater clamore militum terretur. 15. Galli aurum et argentum Cæsari dant.

B. 1. There were many soldiers in Gaul. 2. To the father [he] gives flowers. 3. The shout of the victors is not pleasant to the captives. 4. Cæsar was in Italy; Claudius [was] in Gaul. 5. The mother is terrified by the shouts of the leader. 6. The father praises the odour of the flowers. 7. Why does the chief praise the consul? 8. The consuls were in Italy

[1] Contrast *Cæsar lived* **there** *many years*, where **there** denotes place and would be translated in Latin

then. 9. Cæsar's soldiers terrify the Gauls. 10. O Claudius, thy labour is great. 11. The farmer delights the sisters with trees and flowers. 12. The consul gives a long peace to the Gauls.

(5) *Nouns with stems ending in* -n.

For gender see Appendix, p. 126.

lĕo (masc.), *lion* **hŏmo** (masc.), *man*[1]

	SINGULAR.	
N. and V.	leo	hŏmo
Acc.	leōn-**em**	hŏmĭn-**em**
Gen.	leōn-**ĭs**	hŏmĭn-**ĭs**
Dat.	leōn-**ī**	hŏmĭn-**ī**
Abl.	leōn-**ĕ**	hŏmĭn-**ĕ**
	PLURAL	
N. and V.	leōn-**ēs**	hŏmĭn-**ēs**
Acc.	leōn-**ēs**	hŏmĭn-**ēs**
Gen.	leōn-**um**	hŏmĭn-**um**
Dat.	leōn-**ĭbus**	hŏmĭn-**ĭbus**
Abl.	leōn-**ĭbus**	hŏmĭn-**ĭbus**

26. ACTIVE VOICE. PASSIVE VOICE.

ămăt	*he loves*	amāt-**ur**	*he is loved*[2]
ămant	*they love*	ămant-**ur**	*they are loved*
terrĕt	*he terrifies*	terrēt-**ur**	*he is terrified*
terrent	*they terrify*	terrent-**ur**	*they are terrified*

From the above examples it will be seen that in simple tenses the 3rd person singular and plural of passive verbs is got from the active by adding -ur.

---

[1] **Homo** means a *human being;* **vir** means a *man* (as distinguished from a woman), a *hero.*

[2] When the pupil has learnt the complete passive voice (R. 55, p. 106) he will see that *amātur* means *he is being loved, i.e.,* the action is represented as going on, not as completed.

In the sentence *The farmer is wounded* **by the soldier**, *by the soldier* denotes the **doer** of the action or **agent**, and it is in the ablative case.

Rule 13.—The **ablative of the agent** requires the preposition **a** or **ab**.[1]

The **ablative of the instrument** (§ 9, p. 2) has no preposition.

Agent.[2] The farmer is wounded **by the soldier**
Agricola **a milite** vulneratur

Instrument. The farmer is wounded **by**[3] **a sword**
Agricola **gladio** vulneratur

Exercise 21

A. Put the following verbs into the passive voice, saying or writing the English:—

dat vulnerat delectat mittit videt laudat
dant vulnerant delectant mittunt vident laudant

B. Say which of the italicised phrases denote **agent** and which **instrument**; then translate:—

1. The girl is praised *by [her] mother*. 2. The girls are praised *by the father*. 3. The island is praised *by the queen*. 4. The queen is delighted *by the flowers*. 5. The queen is delighted *by the horses*. 6. The soldier is sent *by Cæsar*. 7. The soldiers are sent *by the leader*. 8. The soldiers are delighted *by the booty*. 9. The boy is praised *by the farmer*. 10. The girl is terrified *by the eagle*.

Exercise 22.

A. 1. Legio ducem bonum habet. 2. Cæsar multas legiones

[1] **A** is used before a consonant; **ab** before a vowel or *h*: **a rēge**, by the king; **ab amīco**, by a friend; **ab hostibus**, by the enemy. It will be seen later that **ab** has other meanings. For the present however it will only mean **by**, denoting the agent.

[2] It should be noted that the **agent** must be a living person or animal.

[3] **By** and **with** are both signs of the instrument. They are always translated by the ablative without preposition.

habet. 3. Scipio legionis ducem laudat. 4. Dux legionum nunc mortuus est. 5. Virgini pater flores dat. 6. Virgo a reginā laudatur. 7. Virgines templum floribus ornant. 8. Virginum mater a rege laudatur. 9. Virgo parva a leone terretur. 10. Templum floribus a virginibus ornatur. 11. Consuli Romani duas[1] legiones dant. 12. Labor legionum Scipioni iucundus est. 13. Leones mulieres terrent.

B. 1. Cæsar sends a legion into Gaul. 2. The victor praises the labours of the legions. 3. Diana praises the gifts of the maidens. 4. There are many lions in Africa. 5. The maidens are terrified by the lions. 6. The legions are sent into Gaul by Cæsar. 7. Scipio is victor; Claudius is dead. 8. To the legions the victor gives great praise. 9. To the victor a crown is given. 10. Money is given to the sailor by the leader. 11. Cæsar sends the legions into Italy. 12. The tender lamb is terrified by the savage lion.

NEUTER NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

NOTE.—Recapitulate Rule 19, pp. 9-10.

nōmen (neut.), *a name*	**ŏpus** (neut.), *a work*	**corpus** (neut.), *body*	**căput** (neut.) *head*
	SINGULAR.		
N., V., A. nōmen	ŏpus	corpus	căput
Gen. nōmĭn-**ĭs**	ŏpĕr-**ĭs**	corpŏr-**ĭs**	căpĭt-**ĭs**
Dat. nōmĭn-**ī**	ŏpĕr-**ī**	corpŏr-**ī**	căpĭt-**ī**
Abl. nōmĭn-**ĕ**	ŏpĕr-**ĕ**	corpŏr-**ĕ**	căpĭt-**ĕ**
	PLURAL.		
N., V., A. nōmĭn-**ă**	ŏpĕr-**ă**	corpŏr-**ă**	căpĭt-**ă**
Gen nōmĭn-**um**	ŏpĕr-**um**	corpŏr-**um**	căpĭt-**um**
Dat. nōmĭn-**ĭbus**	ŏpĕr-**ĭbus**	corpŏr-**ĭbus**	căpĭt-**ĭbus**
Abl. nōmĭn-**ĭbus**	ŏpĕr-**ĭbus**	corpŏr-**ĭbus**	căpĭt-**ĭbus**

For gender see Appendix, p. 126.

[1] *Duas* is the feminine plural accusative of *duo*, two.

Rule 14.—Time when is expressed by the **ablative** *without preposition.*

In winter the sailor fears storms	**Hiĕmĕ** nauta tempestates timet

Similarly **aestātĕ** *in summer*
noctĕ *by* (or *at*) *night*

CAUTION.—Remember that when in denotes **place** it cannot be omitted in Latin: **in agro**, in *the field;* but when it refers to **time** it must be omitted: **aestate**, in *summer.*

EXERCISE **23.**

(1) Give the nominative and genitive plural of :—

carmen	sidus	aestas	litus	historia
genus	stella	fulmen	murus	genus
vulnus	tempus	corpus	caput	opus

(2) Give the Latin for :—

many wounds	by lightning	with songs
of a constellation	of many kinds	a beautiful song
of stars	at night	a beautiful star
of the shores	by a wound	of a beautiful shore

A. 1. Nomina militum duci nota sunt. 2. Anni tempora sunt varia. 3. In sidere sunt multae stellae. 4. Fulmen virginem terret. 5. Sidus viam nautis nocte monstrat. 6. In libro sunt multa genera carminum. 7. Mira sunt opera Dei. 8. Temporibus antiquis (R. 14) in insula multae silvae erant. 9. Quis hiemis frigus non timet? 10. Insula alta litora habet. 11. Aestate horti multos flores habent. 12. In (=*on*) litore sunt multi nautae.

B. 1. The poet's songs delight the woman. 2. Boys are sometimes terrified by lightning. 3. In summer the farmer gives flowers to the king. 4. In winter girls do not like snow. 5. The story of old times delights soldiers. 6. The names of

the constellations are known to the poet. 7. The island has high shores. 8. Wounds are the cause of honour to soldiers. 9. In ancient times the daughters of kings were shepherds. 10. On (say *in*) the shore are many cottages. 11. Poets praise ancient times. 12. By the light of the moon the sailor sees the shore. 13. The captive is wounded by the hostage.

27. Examples of **third declension** nouns declined with adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	Masc.		*Masc.*	
Nom.	**dux**	**clārus**	**dŭcēs**	**clārī**
Voc.	**dux**	**clare**	**duces**	**clari**
Acc	**dŭcem**	**clārum**	**dŭcēs**	**clārōs**
Gen.	**dŭcĭs**	**clārī**	**dŭcum**	**clārōrum**
Dat.	**dŭcī**	**clārō**	**dŭcĭbus**	**clārīs**
Abl.	**dŭcĕ**	**clārō**	**dŭcĭbus**	**clārīs**
	Fem.		*Fem.*	
N. and V.	**lex**	**iustă**	**lēgēs**	**iustae**
Acc.	**lēgem**	**iustam**	**lēgēs**	**iustās**
Gen.	**lēgĭs**	**iustae**	**lēgum**	**iustārum**
Dat.	**lēgī**	**iustae**	**lēgĭbus**	**iustīs**
Abl.	**lēgĕ**	**iustā**	**lēgĭbus**	**iustīs**
	Neut.		*Neut.*	
N. and V.	**magnum**	**ŏpus**	**magnă**	**ŏpĕră**
Acc.	**magnum**	**ŏpus**	**magnă**	**ŏpĕră**
Gen.	**magnī**	**ŏpĕrĭs**	**magnōrum**	**ŏpĕrum**
Dat.	**magnō**	**ŏpĕrī**	**magnīs**	**ŏpĕrĭbus**
Abl.	**magnō**	**ŏpĕrĕ**	**magnīs**	**ŏpĕrĭbus**

Exercise 24.

(1) Decline, singular and plural: *vox grata, obses aeger, clamor magnus, virgo stulta, litus altum*, sing. only, *pax longa.*

Decline in plural only: *multi flores, multa genera, varia sidera, antiqua tempora, multae legiones, nostrae sorores.*

Nouns with Stems in -i.

For gender see Appendix, p. 125.

28. The point to be noticed is that nouns with **-i stems** have **-ium** in the genitive plural, sometimes **-i** in the ablative singular, and in the case of neuter nouns **-ia** in the nominative plural.

A. Masculine and Feminine.

hostĭs (com.), *enemy*	**nūbēs** (fem.), *cloud*	**urbs** (fem.), *city*	**imber** (masc.) *shower*
	SINGULAR.		
N. and V. **hostis**	nūbēs	**urbs**	**imber**
Acc. **hostem**	**nūbem**	**urbem**	**imbrem**
Gen. **hostĭs**	**nūbĭs**	**urbĭs**	**imbrĭs**
Dat. **hostī**	**nūbī**	**urbī**	**imbrī**
Abl. **hostĕ**	**nūbĕ**	**urbĕ**	**imbrĕ**
	PLURAL.		
N. and V. **hostēs**	**nūbēs**	**urbēs**	**imbrēs**
Acc. **hostēs**	**nūbēs**	**urbēs**	**imbrēs**
Gen. **hostĭum**	**nūbĭum**	**urbĭum**	**imbrĭum**
Dat. **hostĭbus**	**nūbĭbus**	**urbĭbus**	**imbrĭbus**
Abl. **hostĭbus**	**nūbĭbus**	**urbĭbus**	**imbrĭbus**

B. Neuter.

mărе, *the sea*	**ănĭmăl**, *animal*	**calcar**, *spur*
	SINGULAR.	
N., V., A. **mărĕ**	**ănĭmăl**	**calcar**
Gen. **mărĭs**	**ănĭmālĭs**	**calcārĭs**
Dat. **mărī**	**ănĭmālī**	**calcārī**
Abl. **mărī**	**ănĭmālī**	**calcārī**
	PLURAL.	
N., V., A. **mărĭă**	**ănĭmālĭa**	**calcārĭa**
Gen. **mărĭum**	**ănĭmālĭum**	**calcārĭum**
Dat. **mărĭbus**	**ănĭmālĭbus**	**calcārĭbus**
Abl. **mărĭbus**	**ănĭmālĭbus**	**calcārĭbus**

29. There are four classes of -i stems :—

(1) Nouns ending in **-is** and **-es** not increasing[1] in the genitive, *e.g.*, **hostis, nubes.** They have the genitive plural in **-ium.**

Two exceptions to this rule are :—

cănis (c.)	**cănis,**	*dog*	gen. plur. **canum**
iŭvĕnis (m.)	iŭvĕnis,	*young man*	„ **iuvenum**

(2) Nouns of one syllable ending in **s** preceded by a consonant, *e.g.*, **urbs, dens.** They have the genitive plural in **-ium.**

Three of the commonest words of this class are :—

mons (m.)	**montis,**	*mountain*	gen. plur. **montium**
nox (f.)	**noctis,**	*night*	„ **noctium**
arx (f.)	**arcis,**	*citadel*	„ **arcium**

(3) The words **imber**[2] (masc.), *shower ;* **linter** (fem.), *boat ;* **ūter** (masc.), *bag ;* **venter** (masc.), *belly.* These have the genitive plural in **-ium.**

(4) All neuters ending in **-e, -al, -ar,** *e.g.*, **măre, ănĭmal, calcar.** These have the ablative singular in **-i,** the nominative plural in **-ia,** and the genitive plural in **-ium.**

30. Notes on **-i** stems.

Some -i stems have the accusative singular in **-im,** the ablative singular in -i, and occasionally the nominative and accusative plural in **-īs.**

(1) The **accusative -im** is always found in names of rivers, *e.g.*, **Tĭbĕris,** the Tiber, and in the nouns **sītis** (fem.), *thirst,* **tussis** (fem.), *cough,* and **vīs** (fem.), *violence.*

---

[1] When the genitive singular has more syllables than the nominative, as in **dux, duc-is,** the noun is said to increase in the genitive. When the nominative and genitive singular have the same number of syllables, as in **hostis, hostis ; imber, imbris,** the noun is spoken of as not increasing in the genitive.

Nouns which do not increase are sometimes called **Parisyllabic** (*i.e.*, equal-syllabled) ; those which increase are called **Imparisyllabic.**

[2] The only common parisyllabic words which do not follow this rule are **păter, māter** and **frāter,** all having **-um** in the genitive plural.

The following sometimes have -im: **febris** (fem.), *fever;* **turris** (fem.), *tower;* **sĕcūris** (fem.), *axe*, and a few others.

(2) The **ablative** in -i is always found in those words which have the accusative in **-im**, and sometimes in the following: **ăvis** (fem.), *bird;* **imber** (masc.), *shower;* **ignis** (masc.), *fire;* **nāvis** (fem.), *ship;* **turris** (fem.), *tower*.

Exercise 25.

(1) Give nominative and genitive plural of :—

auris	mensis	testis	canis
civis	vulpes	arx	turris
ignis	nox	avis	mons

(2) Put into Latin :—

to the citizen	ears (acc.)	by the mountain
of the citadel	of witnesses	of the towers
at night	the fox (acc.)	of the teeth
of the fires	the mountain	the citizen (acc.)

A. 1. Civibus frumentum Cæsar dat. 2. Civium voces vulpem terrent. 3. Oppidum multas turres habet. 4. Aves virginem delectant. 5. Nocte milites in arce sunt. 6. Montium nomina puero nota sunt. 7. Cives testem laudant. 8. Testium voces captivum terrent. 9. In arce est turris alta. 10. Cives timidi in arcem currunt. 11. Portae arcium validae sunt. 12. A civibus verba testis laudantur. 13. Dentibus canum vulpes terretur.

B. 1. There are many kinds of foxes. 2. The Romans were the enemies of the Gauls. 3. In the town are many towers. 4. The timid citizen fears the strong dog. 5. The voices of the birds delight the ears of the citizens. 6. The soldiers *are preparing* (= *părānt*) a fire. 7. In winter the nights are long. 8. The heads of dogs are not large. 9. The names of the months are known to the girl. 10. The leader sees the gates

of the citadel. 11. The teeth of the foxes terrify the dog. 12. The witness is terrified by the voice of the citizen.

Rule 14 (*b*).—**Time when** is expressed by the **ablative** without preposition.

Time how long is expressed by the **accusative** without preposition.

In winter the sailor fears storms	**Hieme** nauta tempestates timet
For[1] **many years** he lived in Italy	**Multos annos** in Italia vixit

Exercise 26.

(1) Decline, singular and plural, *nox frigida, turris alta;* in the plural only, *multi menses, parva animalia.*

(2) of the sea	a troublesome tax	to the strong hunter
by a tax	many animals (acc.)	in the sea
of spurs	with strong nets	the nets of the hunter
in the first year	of sharp teeth	of high towers
in the first month	of small foxes	with a strong spur

A. 1. Venator retia magna parat. 2. In mari sunt multae naves. 3. Maria litora habent, fluvii ripas (habent). 4. Vectigalia civi molesta sunt. 5. Nonnulla animalia multos annos vivunt. 6. Primo anno in Germania erat. 7. Marium litora alta navibus periculosa sunt. 8. Multa genera animalium sunt in silva. 9. Primo mense anni nives civibus saepe molestae sunt. 10. Capita nonnullorum animalium parva sunt. 11. In reti piscatoris sunt multi pisces. 12. Hiemis noctes frigidae venatori molestae sunt.

B. 1. Some foxes are white. 2. At night the hunters prepare nets in the wood. 3. The king gives strong spurs to

[1] When *for* or *during* refers to length of time it is omitted in Latin.

the horseman. 4. [There] are various kinds of animals. 5. Some animals have small ears. 6. Some birds do (R. 6) not live many months. 7. The animals of the seas are the booty of the fisherman. 8. Neptune is the god of the seas. 9. In the sea are many fishes. 10. On (=*in*) the shore of the sea are many cottages. 11. The sharp teeth of animals are destructive to the nets. 12. For many hours the queen is delighted by the birds.

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Most adjectives of the third declension fall under three classes:—

I. Adjectives of three terminations:—
Masc. **ācer,** Fem. **ācrĭs,** Neut. **ācrĕ,** *keen.*

II. Adjectives of two terminations:—
Masc. and Fem. **fortĭs,** Neut. **fortĕ,** *brave.*

III. Adjectives of one termination:—
Masc., Fem. and Neut. **fēlix,** *happy;*
Masc., Fem. and Neut. **prūdens,** *prudent.*

All these adjectives are -i stems. They have therefore:—
1. **-i** in the ablative singular.
2. **-ium** in the genitive plural.
3. **-ia** in the neuter plural.

(1) Acer, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, *keen.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	ācer	ācr-**is**	ācr-ĕ	acr-ēs	acr-ēs	acr-ĭă
Acc.	acr-**em**	acr-**em**	acr-ĕ	acr-ēs	acr-ēs	acr-ĭă
Gen.	acr-**ĭs**	acr-**ĭs**	acr-**ĭs**	acr-**ĭum**	acr-ĭum	acr-**ĭum**
Dat.	acr-ī	acr-ī	acr-ī	acr-**ĭbus**	acr-**ĭbus**	acr-**ĭbus**
Abl.	acr-ī	acr-**ī**	acr-ī	acr-**ĭbus**	acr-ĭbus	acr-**ĭbus**

32. There are only thirteen adjectives declined like *ācer*, of which the following are the chief:—

ălăcer,	ălăcrĭs,	ălăcrĕ,	*brisk*
cĕler,[1]	cĕlĕrĭs,	cĕlĕrĕ,	*swift*
ĕquester,	ĕquestrĭs,	ĕquestrĕ,	*equestrian*
pĕdester,	pĕdestris,	pĕdestrĕ,	*pedestrian*
sălūber,	sălūbris,	sălūbrĕ,	*healthy*

(2) **Fortĭs, fortĕ,** *brave.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	fort-ĭs	fort-ĕ	fort-ēs	fort-ĭă
Acc.	fort-em	fort-ĕ	fort-ēs	fort-ĭă
Gen.	fort-ĭs	fort-ĭs	fort-ĭum	fort-ĭum
Dat.	fort-ī	fort-ī	fort-ĭbus	fort-ĭbus
Abl.	fort-ī	fort-ī	fort-ĭbus	fort-ĭbus

(3) **Fēlix,** *happy.*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	fēlix	fēlix	fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ĭă
Acc.	fēlīc-em	fēlix	fēlīc-ēs	fēlīc-ĭă
Gen.	fēlīc-ĭs	fēlīc-ĭs	fēlīc-ĭum	fēlīc-ĭum
Dat.	fēlīc-ī	fēlīc-ī	fēlīc-ĭbus	fēlīc-ĭbus
Abl.	fēlīc-ī	fēlīc-ī	fēlīc-ĭbus	fēlīc-ĭbus

33. NOTE.—Many words of this class end in **-ns**,[2] *e.g.*, **prūdens** (gen. prudentis), *prudent.* They are declined exactly like felix. Thus the masculine and feminine would be:—

singular, prūdens, prūdent-em, prūdent-is, prūdent-i, prūdent-i;
plural, prūdent-ēs, prūdent-ēs, prūdent-ĭum, prūdent-ĭbus, prūdent-ĭbus.

---

[1] This word can be used as a noun to mean a certain body of soldiers in ancient Rome. It then takes **-um** in the genitive plural. Compare footnote, p. 39. But used as an adjective the genitive plural is in **-ium**. Notice that *cĕler* retains the *e* in declension.

[2] Many words of this class are present participles. They take *-e* in the ablative singular in certain constructions to be explained later. Used as adjectives pure and simple, however, they take *-i*.

34. Some adjectives of the third declension have the ablative **in -e**, the genitive plural in **-um**, and the neuter plural in **-a**. Most of these are comparatives like—Masc. and Fem. **fortĭor**, Neut. **fortĭus**, *braver*.

Fortĭor, fortĭŭs, *braver*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	fortĭor	fortĭus	fortĭōr-**ēs**	fortĭōr-**ă**
Acc.	fortĭōr-**em**	fortĭus	fortĭōr-**ēs**	fortĭōr-**ă**
Gen.	fortĭōr-**ĭs**	fortĭōr-**ĭs**	fortĭōr-**um**	fortĭōr-**um**
Dat.	fortĭōr-ī	fortĭōr-ī	fortĭōr-**ĭbus**	fortĭōr-**ĭbus**
Abl.	fortĭōr-**ĕ**	fortĭōr-**ĕ**	fortĭōr-**ĭbus**	fortĭōr-**ĭbus**

34 (*a*). In addition to comparatives there are a few third declension adjectives of one termination[1] with the ablative in **-e**, the genitive plural in **-um** and the neuter plural in **-a**. The commonest words of this class are:—

Dīvĕs[1] gen. **dīvĭtis** *rich.*
Pauper[1] „ **paupĕris** *poor.*
Supplex[1] „ **supplĭcis** *suppliant.*
Vĕtus „ **vĕtĕris** *old.*

Dīvĕs, *rich*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
	M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N. and V.	dīvĕs	dīvĕs	dīvĭt-**ēs**	dīvĭt-**ă**
Acc.	dīvĭt-**em**	dīvĕs	dīvĭt-**ēs**	dīvĭt-**ă**
Gen.	dīvĭt-**ĭs**	dīvĭt-**ĭs**	dīvĭt-**um**	dīvĭt-**um**
Dat.	dīvĭt-ī	dīvĭt-ī	dīvĭt-**ĭbus**	dīvĭt-**ĭbus**
Abl.	dīvĭt-**ĕ**	dīvĭt-**ĕ**	dīvĭt-**ĭbus**	dīvĭt-**ĭbus**

[1] Most words of this class can be used as nouns: **dīves,** *a rich man.* Compare footnote 1, p. 38.

Mĕmor, gen. **memŏris,** *mindful*, has the ablative singular in **-i**, and the genitive plural in **-um**.

Exercise 27.

Learn §§ 31-33.

(1) Write out (singular and plural) *celer equus, vita salubris*, and (plural only) *equestre proelium.*

(2) Give the nominative and accusative, singular and plural of:—

acris pugna	sagitta celeris	cibus saluber
acre bellum	hasta celeris	regio salubris
acer equus	equus celer	vita salubris

(3) Put into Latin:—

by a keen war	of equestrian battles	in a healthy region
of a swift arrow	of keen wars	by a keen leader
of swift arrows	of swift horses	of keen leaders
equestrian battles	of a healthy life	of swift ships

Exercise 28.

(1) Decline (singular and plural) *gladius brevis, aqua dulcis*: (singular only) *dux tristis*; (plural only) *exemplum utile.*

(2) Give the nominative and genitive singular of:—

a short life	a useful plan	a faithful hostage
sweet wine	a useful law	a brave boy
a fertile field	a faithful slave	a cruel war
a fertile region	a disgraceful death	a short war
a cruel master	a faithful dog	a sad war

(3) Put into Latin:—

to a faithful friend	of useful laws
of a cruel war	all the cities
a sad mother (acc.)	of all the cities
of a fertile region	all the dangers
the faithful leaders	of all the dangers
useful laws	all wars

Exercise 29.

(1) Decline (singular and plural) *audax nauta, audax consilium;* and (plural only) *amīcus absens.*

(2) Give the nominative and genitive of:—

a bold word	wise men	a wise mother
a prudent mother	a wise plan	a wise father
a powerful leader	bold boys	a happy life
the present time	bold plans	a happy king

(3) Put into Latin:—

by bold plans	of an absent mother	the present time
of wise men	to a wise man	with bold words
a powerful king (acc.)	by a bold king	with wise words
to powerful kings	present times	of a powerful queen

Rule 15.—(*a*) A **masculine adjective** is often used without a noun (especially in the plural) to mean **man** or **men.**

sapiens	*a wise (man)*	**sapientes**	*wise (men)*
boni	*good (men)*	**nostri**[1]	*our (men)*

Note.—In English this is only possible in the plural. In *The* **rich** *are not always happy*, **rich** means *rich people*, and is plural.

(*b*) A **neuter adjective** is often used (especially in the plural) to mean a **thing** or **things.**

bŏnă	*good (things)*	**omnia**	*all (things)*

Exercise 30. Vocs. 27-29.

Recapitulate §§ 31-33.

A. 1. Milites ducem audacem amant. 2. Reges insularum potentes sunt. 3. Ira potentium regum civibus molesta est. 4. Omnes (R. 15) tempora antiqua non laudant. 5. Omnia puerum tristem terrent. 6. Exempla sapientium matrum puellis sunt utilia. 7. Mala praesentium temporum regi nota sunt. 8. Boni non semper felices sunt. 9. Feroci leoni

[1] *Nostri* is the plural of the adjective *noster* (Vocab. 16).

venator agnum dat. 10. Romani gladios breves habent. 11. Cæsar nostros in Galliam mittit. 12. Gallia solum fertile habet.

B. 1. Many [men] praise the brave hunter. 2. The wise are always happy. 3. All [things] are useful to the wise. 4. Our [men] praise the faithful hostage. 5. Our [men] are praised by (R. 13) the powerful leader. 6. The swift ships have bold sailors. 7. He gives sweet wine to the keen leader. 8. Who does not fear a disgraceful death? 9. A cruel war is not useful to citizens. 10. Wars are always cruel.

C. 1. The keen horse is wounded by the swift spear. 2. The Gauls give fresh (=sweet) water to our [men]. 3. In that (=*ea*) fight our-men were in sad dangers. 4. Britain is the fatherland of bold sailors. 5. The life of the brave is often short. 6. The words of absent friends are useful to friends. 7. The little girl is frightened by the swift horse. 8. In Africa are fierce lions. 9. The citizen does not praise the healthy life of the farmer. 10. Base examples are not troublesome to the prudent.

Exercise 31.

Learn §§ 34-34 (*a*).

(1) a shorter night
of a shorter night
shorter swords
with shorter swords
a shorter song
shorter songs
a more fertile field
in a more fertile field
more fertile gardens
a more useful plan
by a more useful plan
more useful plans
of more useful plans
more powerful kings
of more powerful kings
an easier work
of an easier work
a more powerful kingdom
shorter spears
more useful arms

(2) rich kings	to poor soldiers	to an old soldier
of rich kings	a rich temple	old soldiers
to a rich queen	in a rich temple	of old soldiers
poor soldiers	an old soldier	old wine

EXERCISE 32. Vocs. 27-31.

A. 1. Rex dives fertiles insulas habet. 2. Divites non semper pauperes laudant. 3. Romani gladios breviores quam Galli habent. 4. Aestate noctes sunt breviores quam hieme. 5. Fortibus omnia pericula sunt levia. 6. Puella vocem dulciorem quam puer habet. 7. Ferrum utilius quam argentum est. 8. In ea (= *that*) pugna equites utiliores erant quam pedites. 9. Boni pecuniam pauperibus saepe dant. 10. Miles vetus multa vulnera habet.

B. 1. The wounds of the old soldier are not light.[1] 2. To a rich [man] all things are easy. 3. The light[1] of the sun is more useful than [the light] of the moon. 4. Bold plans are more useful than imprudent words. 5. To the poor girl many [things] are given by the rich queen. 6. In summer the nights are short. 7. To the old soldier the leader gives a reward. 8. The shield is shorter than the spear (R. 17). 9. Soldiers are not braver than sailors. 10. Arrows are more useful to the hunter than spears.

35. The **fourth** or **-U declension.**

The fourth declension consists of masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-us** and neuters in **-u**. The genitive singular is **-ūs**, genitive plural **-uum**.

For gender see Appendix, p. 127.

	grădŭs (masc.), *a step*		**cornū** (neut.), *horn*	
N. and V.	grăd-**ŭs**	grăd-**ūs**	corn-**ū**	corn-**ŭă**
Acc.	grăd-**um**	grăd-**ūs**	corn-**ū**	corn-**ŭă**
Gen.	grăd-**ūs**	grăd-**ŭum**	corn-**ūs**	corn-**ŭum**
Dat.	grăd-**ŭī**	grăd-**ĭbus**	corn-**ū**	corn-**ĭbus**
Abl.	grăd-**ū**	grăd-**ĭbus**	corn-**ū**	corn-**ĭbus**

[1] What part of speech is this word? See voc. 31, p. 135.

36. NOTES.—(1) The dative singular **-ui** is sometimes contracted to **-u** *e.g.*, *gradu*, *cornu*.

(2) Certain words have the dative and ablative plural in **-ŭbus** instead of **-ĭbus**. These are:—

(*a*) Words ending in **-cus.**

ăcus	(fem.)	*needle*	dative and ablative plural		**ăcŭbus**
arcus	(masc.)	*bow*	,,	,,	**arcŭbus**
lăcus	(masc.)	*lake*	,,	,,	**lăcŭbus**
quercus	(fem.)	*oak*	,,	,,	**quercŭbus**
(*b*) **artūs**	(masc.)	*joints*	,,	,,	**artŭbus**
partus	(masc.)	*birth*	,,	,,	**partŭbus**
portus	(masc.)	*harbour*	,,	,,	**portŭbus**
trĭbus	(fem.)	*tribe*	,,	,,	**trĭbŭbus**

(3) Some names of trees, *e.g.*, **fīcus** (fem.), *a fig tree*, are declined throughout like the second declension, but in addition they can have those cases of the fourth declension which end in **-u** and **-ūs**, *viz.*, genitive and ablative singular, nominative and accusative plural.

EXERCISE 33.

Learn §§ 35-36.

A. 1. Arcūs multos venator habet. 2. Acus est acuta. 3. Acus acuta manum vulnerat. 4. Agricolae manūs durae sunt. 5. Genua equi dura sunt. 6. Exercitum in Galliam Cæsar ducit. 7. Consules duces exercituum erant. 8. Exercitu magno Gallos superat. 9. Currūs Gallorum Romanis perniciosi erant. 10. In portu sunt multae naves. 11. Adventus Romanorum causa fugae erat. 12. Britannia multos portus habet.

B. 1. The farmer gives a bow to the hunter. 2. The hunters have plenty of bows. 3. Sharp needles are useful to women. 4. The Gauls lead [their] army into Italy. 5. The slave fears the arrival of the lord. 6. The leader of the army is the consul (R. 8). 7. The attack of the Romans terrifies the Gauls. 8. The bull wounds the hunter with [his] horn. 9. The chariots of the consul are in the field. 10. In the harbours of Britain are many ships.

Exercise 34.

§§ 35-36.

A. 1. Hostium equitatus Romanorum exercitum superat. 2. Exercituum duces ex[1] curribus pugnant. 3. Quercūs Britanniae omnibus notae sunt. 4. Galli impetum in (= *on*) equitatum Romanorum faciunt. 5. Adventus Hannibalis causa metūs Romanis erat 6. Hannibal exercitum trans Alpes in Italiam ducit. 7. Transitus Alpium Hannibali non facilis erat. 8. In Alpibus sunt multi lacūs. 9. Adventus equitatus victōriam Hannibali dat. 10. Ex equis victor pugnat. 11. In conspectu exercituum duces pugnant. 12. Puella fructu arboris altae delectatur. 13. In Britannia currūs incolarum milites Romanos terrent.

B. 1. He leads the cavalry over the Alps. 2. The cavalry makes an attack on (= *in* with acc.) the Gauls. 3. The fruit of oaks is useful to animals. 4. Across the river are the Germans. 5. The crossing of the Alps was difficult to all generals. 6. The Gauls fight on horseback (= horses). 7. The inhabitants of Britain fight in chariots. 8. In the harbours of Britain are many sailors. 9. Cæsar leads [his] army across the mountains. 10. The enemy (*plural*) has no (*say* not) cavalry. 11. Hannibal's victories were the cause of fear to the citizens. 12. In sight of the Alps Hannibal overcomes the Roman cavalry.

37. The fifth or -E declension.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in -es, with genitive in -ei.

	rēs (fem.), *thing*		diēs (masc.), *day*	
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. and V.	r-ēs	r-ēs	dĭ-ēs	dĭ-ēs
Acc.	r-em	r-ēs	dĭ-em	dĭ-ēs
Gen.	r-ĕī	r-ērum	dĭ-ēī	dĭ-ērum
Dat.	r-ĕī	r-ēbus	dĭ-ēī	dĭ-ēbus
Abl.	r-ē	r-ēbus	dĭ-ē	dĭ-ēbus

[1] Literally **out of.** Say *in.* An Englishman thinks of *where* the fighter is and says *in;* the Romans think of *where* the fighting comes *from* and say *out of.*

38. NOTES.—(1) The genitive and dative singular sometimes contract *-ei* into *-ĕ*.

(2) **Dies** and **res** are the only nouns of the fifth declension which are declined throughout in singular and plural. Most of the others have no plural, though the nominative and accusative plural are found in a few words, *e.g.*, *acies*, *facies*, *spes*, etc.

(3) Gender of fifth declension: **Dĭēs**[1] and **mĕrīdĭes** (*mid-day*) are **masculine**; all others are feminine.

(4) The meaning of **res** is always a trouble to beginners. It means **thing** or **things** in the sense of **circumstances** or **affairs.**

EXERCISE 35.

1. Write out (singular only) *acies*, *spes* and *res publica*.

2.

by hope	of the face	of adversity
hope (acc.)	face (acc.)	in adversity
in the line of battle	prosperity (acc.)	in the plain
to the commonwealth	in prosperity	on the first day

A. 1. Horae diei aestate iucundae sunt. 2. Multos dies in nostra urbe mansit (*he remained*). 3. Victoria exercitus cives spe complet. 4. Bonae leges rei publicae utiliores sunt quam alti muri. 5. In acie hostium sunt servi. 6. In dextro cornu aciei erant equites. 7. Spes praedae militem delectat. 8. Initia multarum rerum sunt parva. 9. In rebus secundis homines multos amicos habent. 10. Primo die Cæsar exercitum in Galliam mittit.

B. 1. The hour of mid-day is often the hour of a meal (= food). 2. The girl delights [her] friends by [her] beautiful face. 3. Our camp is (*say* are) in the plain. 4. The leader sees the line-of-battle of the enemy. 5. Men are delighted by prosperity. 6. In adversity wretched [men] have not always

[1] **Dies** is always **masculine** in the plural. **Dies** in singular is feminine when it means a fixed, appointed time, and also in poetry. Pupils however should always **make it masculine** until they have acquired greater experience.

friends. 7. The victory gives a new hope to the commonwealth. 8. The king is the lord of all things. 9. The long line [of the army] terrifies the enemy (plural). 10. Fear is the enemy of hope.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three degrees of comparison:–

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
dur-us, *hard*	dur-ior, *harder*	dur-issĭmus, *hardest*

39. In Latin the **comparative** is formed by taking away the **-i** or **-is** of the genitive singular of the positive and adding **-ior.** Thus

durus, genitive dur-i, comparative dur-**ior.**

The **superlative** is formed by taking away the -i or **-is** of the genitive singular of the positive and adding **-issĭmus.** Thus:—

durus, genitive dur-i, superlative dur-**issimus.**

Positive.	*Genitive Sing.*	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
clārus	clār-i	clār-**ior**	clār-**issĭmus**
famous		*more famous*	*most famous*
fortis	fort-**is**	fort-**ior**	fort-**issĭmus**
brave		*braver*	*bravest*
audax	audāc-**is**	audāc-**ior**	audāc-**issĭmus**
bold		*bolder*	*boldest*
prūdens	prūdent-**is**	prūdent-**ior**	prūdent-**issĭmus**
prudent		*more prudent*	*most prudent*

40. Special cases.—All adjectives ending in **-er** are regular in the comparative, but they form the superlative irregularly by adding **-rĭmus** to the **nominative.**[1]

[1]As the ending is added to the nominative, the superlative has double r.

Positive.		*Genitive Sing.*	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
pulcher	*beautiful*	pulchr-**i**	pulchr-**ior**	pulcher-**rĭmus**
asper	*rough*	aspĕr-**i**	aspĕr-**ior**	asper-**rĭmus**
ācer	*keen*	ācr-**is**	ācr-**ior**	ācer-**rĭmus**
cĕler	*swift*	cĕlĕr-**is**	cĕlĕr-**ior**	cĕler-**rĭmus**

41. Six adjectives ending in **-ĭlis** are regular in the comparative, but form the superlative by adding **-lĭmus** instead of **-issĭmus.**

Positive.		*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
făcĭl-**is**	*easy*	făcĭl-**ior**	făcil-**lĭmus**[1]
difficĭl-**is**	*difficult*	difficĭl-**ior**	difficil-**lĭmus**
sĭmĭl-**is**	*like*	sĭmĭl-**ior**	sĭmil-**lĭmus**
dissĭmĭl-**is**	*unlike*	dissĭmĭl-**ior**	dissĭmil-**lĭmus**
grăcĭl-**is**	*thin*	grăcĭl-**ior**	grăcil-**lĭmus**
hŭmĭl-**is**	*low*	hŭmĭl-**ior**	hŭmil-**lĭmus**

41 (*a*). All other adjectives in -ilis are regular, *e.g.*,

nōbĭl-**is**	*noble*	nōbĭl-**ior**	nōbĭl-**issĭmus**

Rule 16.—All **comparatives** are declined like **fortior** (masc. and fem.), **fortius** (neut.), p. 39; all **superlatives** like **bonus, -a, -um.**

EXERCISE **36.**

§§ 39-41.

A. Give the comparative and superlative of:—

gratus	altus	brevis	audax
longus	molestus	crudelis	ferox
validus	aeger	dulcis	potens
latus	pulcher	fidelis	sapiens

B. Give nominative and accusative singular of:—

a long day	a short garment	a beautiful garden
a longer day	a shorter garment	a more beautiful garden
the longest day	the shortest garment	the most beautiful garden
a broad river	a bold plan	a powerful leader
a broader river	a bolder plan	a more powerful leader
the broadest river	the boldest plan	the most powerful leader

[1] Notice the double l in the superlative.

Rule 17.—The case of the noun after *than* can always be found by completing the sentence. Thus *The earth is larger than the moon* means *The earth is larger than the moon* (**is**), from which we see that *moon* is nominative to *is* (understood). Again, *I see the sun more plainly than the moon* means *I see the sun more plainly than* (**I see**) *the moon*. Here then the word *moon* is the object of *see* (understood).

Rule 18.—When the noun after *quam* is either nominative or accusative **quam** may be omitted, the noun being put in the **ablative.**[1]

The sailor is stronger **than the soldier**	Nauta validior est **quam miles**
	or Nauta validior est **militĕ**

Rule 19.—When **more**[2] and **most**[2] are used with **adjectives** they are merely signs of the comparative and superlative degree, and are not translated (as a rule[3]) by a separate word, *e.g.*, *more beautiful* = pulchrior.

Exercise 37.

Viva Voce :—

a most faithful ally	to a dearer companion	to a most keen man
a keener weapon	higher towers	the highest mountains
stronger soldiers	of a denser wood	happier times
safer peace	a most difficult work	swifter ships

A. 1. Equi celeriores quam canes sunt. 2. Sapientissimus Romanorum erat Scipio. 3. Rhenus est latior Rhŏdăno. 4. Columba hominibus gratior quam aquila est. 5. Pax tutior est bello. 6. Sociorum potentissimi erant Belgae. 7. Oppidum turrem altissimam (R. 20 (*b*)) habet. 8. Quis est acrior quam

---

[1] This is usually parsed as the **ablative of comparison.**

[2] When these words are used with **nouns**, *e.g.*, *more men*, they denote **quantity** and are translated by **plus**, etc. (R. 22).

[3] See § 47.

audax nauta? 9. Quid tristius bello est? 10. Hannibal exercitum acriorem habet quam Scipio.

B. 1. Who is more powerful than our consul? 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. Sometimes a slave is more faithful than [his] master. 4. The highest tower is in the citadel. 5. War is the saddest of evils. 6. The work is more difficult to the boy than to the girl. 7. The Belgians were keener than the Gauls. 8. The victories of Cæsar were easier in Gaul than in Britain. 9. O most wise judge, grant pardon (= *da veniam*) to the most wretched captive. 10. What is more useful to a soldier than a very keen weapon?

Rule 20.—Comparatives and **superlatives** can be translated in several ways :—

(*a*) **Fortior** means *braver* or *rather brave* or *too brave.*

(*b*) **Fortissimus** means *bravest* or *very brave.*

Rule 21.—Latin uses the **superlative** much more than English. Thus *The* **brave** *leader was killed* could be translated *The* **very brave** *leader,* etc.

Exercise 38.

A. 1. Galli socios fidelissimos habebant. 2. Dux militibus quam equitibus carior est. 3. Quid difficilius est quam transitus Alpium? 4. Omnium Gallorum ferocissimi sunt Belgae. 5. Memoria feliciorum temporum seni iucundissima erat. 6. Rhenus longissimus (R. 20 (*b*)) et latissimus est. 7. Omnium acerrimus erat Hannibal. 8. Multi divites sunt miserrimi. 9. In Hannibale erat acerrimus amor patriae. 10. Transitus Alpium difficillimus est.

B. 1. The mountains of the island are very high. 2. Our [men] have rather-short swords. 3. The journey is more difficult in winter than in summer. 4. The Alps are the highest mountains of Europe. 5. Journeys are easiest in

summer. 6. By patience men overcome most difficult [things]. 7. Of all animals lions are fiercest. 8. The inhabitants of Britain had wider ships than the Romans. 9. To the Romans the Germans were most troublesome. 10. The ancient towns of the Germans had rather high towers. 11. Who praises wretched (R. 21) fortune?

42. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Positive.		*Comparative.*		*Superlative.*	
bŏnus	*good*	**mēlior**	*better*	**optĭmus**[1]	*best*
mălus	*bad*	**pēior**[2]	*worse*	**pessĭmus**[1]	*worst*
magnus	*great*	**māior**[2]	*greater*	**maxĭmus**	*greatest*
parvus	*small*	**mĭnor**	*less*	**mĭnĭmus**	*least*
multum	*much*	**plūs**	*more*	**plūrĭmum**	*most*
multi	*many*	**plūres**	*more*	**plūrĭmi**	*most*
vĕtus	*old*	**vĕtustior**	*older*	**vĕterrĭmus**	*oldest*
nēquam[3]	*worthless*	**nēquior**	*more worthless*	**nēquissĭmus**	*most worthless*

43. NOTES.—(1) **Multum** is the neuter of **multus.** Its use is explained in R. 22, p. 53.

(2) In the singular **plus** is only used **as a noun** in the neuter; see R. 22, p. 53. In the plural it is an adjective, and is thus declined:—

	SINGULAR (Noun).	PLURAL (Adjective).	
	Neut.	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. and A.	**plūs**	**plūres**	**plūră**
Gen.	**plūris**	**plūrium**	**plūrium**
Dat.	**plūrī**	**plūrĭbus**	**plūrĭbus**
Abl.	**plūrĕ**	**plūrĭbus**	**plūrĭbus**

[1] Remember R. 20 (*b*). **Maximus** especially very often means *very great;* **plurimum**, *very much;* **optimus**. *very good*, etc.

[2] These words are sometimes spelled *pejor* and *major* (§ 4 (*a*); Appendix I., p. 121). Notice also that the neuter singular of all comparatives is got by changing **-or** into **-us.**

[3] This word is indeclinable.

44. *Comparative.* *Superlative.*

sĕnior	*older*	**nātū maxĭmus**	*oldest*
iūnior	*younger*	**nātū mĭnĭmus**	*youngest*
ultĕrior	*further*	**ultĭmus**	*furthest* or *last*
infĕrior	*lower*	**infĭmus** or **īmus**	*lowest*
intĕrior	*inner*	**intĭmus**	*inmost*
extĕrior	*outer*	**extrēmus**	*outermost* or *last*
prŏpior	*nearer*	**proxĭmus**	*nearest* or *next*
postĕrior	*later*	**postrēmus**	*last*
prĭor	*former*	**prīmus**	*first*
sŭpĕrior	*upper*	**sŭprēmus** or **summus**	*highest*

45. NOTES.—(1) The above comparatives and superlatives have no real adjective in the positive. Some are derived from nouns, *e.g.*, **senior** from *senex;* others from adjectives rarely used except as nouns in the plural (R. 15), *e.g.*, **superior** from *superus*, which is mostly used in the plural, *superi* meaning the gods, *i.e.*, those above; and others from prepositions, *e.g.*, **propior** from *prope*, near.

(2) In *natu maximus*, etc., **natu** is the ablative of a noun meaning *by birth*. Thus *natu maximus* means *greatest by birth*, i.e., *oldest*. In declining, *natu* remains unaltered. Thus *natu maxima*, *natu maximi*.

(3) *Natu maior* can be used for *senior*, and *natu minor* for *iunior*.

46. Words ending in **-dĭcus**, **-fĭcus** and **-vŏlus** form the comparative in **-entior** and the superlative in **-entissĭmus**.

mălĕdĭcus	*slanderous*	**mălĕdĭcentior**	**mălĕdĭcentissĭmus**
mūnĭfĭcus	*munificent*	**mūnĭfĭcentior**	**mūnĭfĭcentissĭmus**
bĕnĕvŏlus	*benevolent*	**bĕnĕvŏlentĭor**	**bĕnĕvŏlentissĭmus**

47. Words ending in **-eus** and **-ius** are compared by prefixing the adverb **măgis**, *more;* **maxĭmē**, *most*. Thus **noxĭus**, *hurtful;* **măgis noxius, maxĭmē noxĭus.**

NOTE.—In declining such words, **magis** and **maxime**, being adverbs (see note 2, Voc. 7, p. 130), remain unaltered. Thus the feminine is *magis noxia*, accusative *magis noxiam*, etc., neuter *magis noxium*, etc.

EXERCISE 39.

Learn §§ 42-47.

(1) Decline (singular and plural) *prius tempus, filia nequior* (see p. 122, § 1), and (singular only) *frater natu maximus.*

(2) Give nominative and accusative of:—

a better part	more words	very many trees
a worse place	the best deeds	the worst deeds
smaller islands	the greatest number	most worthless sons
more trees	very many [men]	the oldest soldier

(3) Put into Latin:—

former times	the inner wall (acc.)	rather old [men]
in former times	of the inner wall	to rather old [men]
the upper fords	on the first night	of most benevolent [men]
of the upper fords	on the next night	to a very dutiful son

Rule 22.—When the words **much,**[1] **more, most** are used with a noun in the singular number, the neuters **multum, plus, plurimum** are used, the noun being put in the **genitive case:**

Much money, **Multum pecuniae**

The genitive used with words of this kind is called the **partitive genitive** because it means a **part** of the thing spoken of. Compare R. 24.

With plural nouns the words **many,**[1] **more, most** are treated as adjectives agreeing with their nouns in every way:

More bravery, **Plus fortĭtūdĭnis**
More daughters, **Plures filiae**

EXERCISE **40.**

§§ 42-47 and R. 22.

Viva voce:—

very much money	more hope	much wisdom
very many sailors	more time	many allies
to very many sailors	more flowers	many islands

A. 1. Maiorem partem insulae superat. 2. Maximum (R. 20 (*b*)) numerum carrorum Galli habent. 3. Senis consilium est melius et facilius. 4. Pessimi (R. 20 (*b*)) ab omnibus

[1] When *much, more, most* mean **quantity,** they are put in the neuter and take a genitive. When they refer to **number,** they are treated as adjectives.

timentur. 5. In duce erat plus audaciae quam sapientiae. 6. Superiora vada inferioribus meliora sunt. 7. In flumine sunt minores insulae. 8. Plures ignes in castris imperator facit. 9. Optimo militum plurimum pecuniae dat. 10. Priore bello victor erat. 11. Quid peius bello est? 12. Proxima nocte socios in arcem duxit. 13. Maior pernicies iumentorum quam hominum in transitu erat.

B. 1. The enemy have a very great number of foot-soldiers. 2. In the next year he overcomes the smaller states. 3. What is better for men than virtue? 4. In the former summer he led the army across the Alps. 5. The upper part of the river has very high banks. 6. On (= *in* with ablative) the inner wall were many soldiers. 7. In (R. 14. *Caution*) our leader there is very much boldness. 8. The lower fords are too (R. 20 (*a*)) difficult. 9. The greater part of the enemy is in the woods. 10. There was more hope in the old man than in [his] son.

48. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

	1st Person.		*2nd Person.*	
		SINGULAR.		
Nom.	**ĕgŏ**	*I*	**tū**	*thou*
Acc.	**mē**	*me*	**tē**	*thee*
Gen.	**mĕi**	*of me*	**tŭi**	*of thee*
Dat.	**mĭhĭ**	*to me*	**tĭbĭ**	*to thee*
Abl.	**mē**	*by me*	**tē**	*by thee*
		PLURAL.		
Nom.	**nōs**	*we*	**vōs**	*you*
Acc.	**nōs**	*us*	**vōs**	*you*
Gen.	**nostri** or **nostrum**[1]	*of us*	**vestri** or **vestrum**[1]	*of you*
Dat.	**nōbīs**	*to us*	**vōbīs**	*to you*
Abl.	**nōbīs**	*by us*	**vōbīs**	*by you*

[1] See R. 24, p. 55.

3rd Person.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	**ĭs**	*he*	**ĕă**	*she*	**ĭd**	*it*
Acc.	**ĕum**	*him*	**ĕam**	*her*	**ĭd**	*it*
Gen.	**ēiŭs**	*of him*	**ēius**	*of her*	**ēius**	*of it*
Dat.	**ĕī**	*to him*	**ĕī**	*to her*	**ĕī**	*to it*
Abl.	**ĕō**	*by him*	**ĕā**	*by her*	**ĕo**	*by it*

PLURAL.

Nom.	**ĕi** (or **ii**)	*they*	**ĕae**	*they*	**ĕă**	*they*
Acc.	**ĕōs**	*them*	**ĕās**	*them*	**ĕă**	*them*
Gen.	**ĕōrum**	*of them*	**ĕārum**	*of them*	**ĕōrum**	*of them*
Dat.	**ĕīs (iis)**	*to them*	**ĕīs (iis)**	*to them*	**ĕīs (iis)**	*to them*
Abl.	**ĕīs (iis)**	*by them*	**ĕīs (iis)**	*by them*	**ĕīs (iis)**	*by them*

48 (*a*). The **reflexive pronoun** has no nominative. Its declension is the same for all genders and for singular and plural.

Acc. **sē**	*himself,*	*herself,*	*itself,*	*themselves.*	
Gen. **sŭī** *of*	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Dat. **sĭbi** *to*	,,	,,	,,	,,	
Abl. **sē** *by*	,,	,,	,,	,,	

NOTES.—(1) The double form **sēsē** is used emphatically for **se** (accusative and ablative).

(2) The nominative is supplied by the adjective **ipse, ipsa, ipsum,** to be explained later.

49. *Present tense of the verb* **To be.**

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
ego	**sum**	*I am*	nos	**sŭmus**	*we are*
tu	**ĕs**	*thou art*	vos	**estĭs**	*you are*
is	**est**	*he is*	ei	**sunt**	*they are*

Personal pronouns used as subjects of verbs are not expressed except when emphatic. See R. 30.

Rule 23.—When *you* refers to one person it must be translated in Latin by **tu**, and the corresponding singular verb must be used.

Rule 24.—Nostrum, *of us,* and **vestrum,** *of you,* can only

be used when a number is referred to.[1] **Nostri,** *of us*, and **vestri,** *of you*, are used in other cases.

Many **of us**	Multi **nostrum**
He is mindful **of us**	Memor **nostri** est

Exercise 41.

A. 1. Mihi multos libros pater dat. 2. Nos sumus in horto, vos estis in urbe. 3. Eis libros dat, nobis equos (dat). 4. Me mater culpat, te laudat. 5. Nemo nostrum vos laudat. 6. Hostes audaces sunt; consilia ducis eis nota sunt. 7. Tibi hortus gratus est, nobis urbs grata est. 8. In me est amor patriae. 9. Stulti saepe se laudant. 10. Soror bona est; fratres eam laudant.

B. 1. The leader praises us. 2. Who blames you, O son? 3. Many of us blame her. 4. The city is not pleasing to us in summer. 5. The children are always mindful of us. 6. In you, O soldiers, there is great love of valour. 7. Which of you blames me? 8. Wise [men] do not praise themselves. 9. The plans of the enemy are known to him. 10. To me he gives gold, to you silver.

Rule 25.—Translation of **it** and **they.** In Latin *it* and *they* may be masculine, feminine or neuter, according to the gender of the word they stand for.

Thus *it* standing for *field*, ager (masc.) = is.
it ,, ,, *spear*, hasta (fem.) = ea.
it ,, ,, *war*, bellum (neut.) = id.

Rule 26.—Is, ea, id is really an adjective meaning **that,**[2] plural **those.**

At **that** time	**Eo** tempŏrĕ
In **those** times	**Eis** tempŏrĭbus

[1] *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are **partitive genitives**, *i.e.*, they can only be used when a number (*i.e.*, a part) of us or of you is meant.

[2] It will be seen from this rule that when **is** is used to translate **he** it really means *that man*; **ea means** *that woman*, etc.

The plurals of **is**, *viz.*, **ei, eae, ea,** will therefore be frequently translated by **those** as well as by **they** and **them.**

Exercise 42.

A. 1. Equus niger est; quis eum non laudat? 2. Consilia bona sunt; ea nobis nota sunt. 3. Femina bona sese non laudat. 4. Rex scutum militi dat; miles id amico dat. 5. Ea templa sunt Neptuni domus. 6. Eo die rex in templo erat. 7. Patria eis grata est, eam omnes laudant. 8. Ea nocte comites in castris erant. 9. Castra in conspectu urbis sunt;[1] in eis[1] sunt multi milites. 10. Noctes hiemis longae sunt; quis nostrum eas laudat?

B. 1. The temple is in the wood; the maidens adorn it with flowers. 2. To them the farmers give corn. 3. In that summer the leader was in Italy. 4. That queen has many islands. 5. In that island are many farmers. 6. The wars of the Gauls are known to you; Cæsar narrates (= *narrat*) them. 7. The women are brave; the citizens praise them. 8. He gives those things (R. 15 (*b*)) to the leader. 9. To me he gives water; to her wine. 10. In us is love of [our] fatherland.

50. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

mĕus,	**mĕă,**	**mĕum**	*my, mine*
tŭus,	**tŭă,**	**tŭum**	*thy, thine*
sŭus,	**sŭă,**	**sŭum**	*his, hers, its, their*
noster,	**nostră,**	**nostrum**	*our, ours*
vester,	**vestră,**	**vestrum**	*your, yours*

These words are all declined like *bonus* or *niger*, and like all adjectives they agree in gender, case and number with their nouns. Thus *păter meus*, accusative *pătrem meum*, etc.; *māter mea*, dative *matri meae*.

Rule 27.—Place the possessive adjective **after** its noun: our father = pater **noster.**

[1] The pupil should remember the number and gender of *castra*.

Exercise 43.

Put into Latin :—

to my brother	our friend	my friends (acc.)
my brothers (acc.)	to our friend	of my horses
of my brothers	our island	by my voice
my land	in our island	of our city
of my land	your garden	our [men] (R. 15)
my lands (acc.)	your gardens	to your mother
thy plans	your war	your wounds
of thy plans	your wars	into thy hands

51. *How to translate* his, her, *etc.*

There is some difficulty in translating the words **his, her, its** and **their.** Sometimes **suus** is used, sometimes **eius, eorum, earum.**

Rule 28.—(*a*) **Suus** can only be used when the word it translates stands for the **subject**[1] **of the sentence.**

The king praises **his** soldiers Milites **suos** rex laudat

The subject of *praises* is *king ;* **his** = **the king's,** *i.e., his* stands for the subject of the sentence, and is therefore translated by **suus.**

In using *suus* it must be noted that **suus** must agree with the noun it goes with. Thus :—

his mother	**sua** mater	**his** shield	**suum** scutum
his sword	**suus** gladius	**their** spear	**sua** hasta
his friends	**sui** amici	**their** spears	**suae** hastae

*** Note.—Each of the words **suus, sua, suum** can mean **his, her, its,** or **their,** the *gender depending entirely on the noun* **his,** etc., *agrees with.* Thus in the case of **suus** :—

The father praises **his** son = **suum** filium
The mother praises **her** son = **suum** filium
The horse carries **its** master = **suum** dominum
The soldiers praise **their** leader = **suum** ducem

---

[1] This rule will require a slight qualification later. For the present **it** will cover all cases that occur.

(*b*) When *his, her, its* or *their* do not stand for the subject of the sentence the words **eius, eorum, earum** are used.

I praise **her** daughters — **Eius** filias ego laudo

Here *I* is the subject of the sentence; *her* cannot stand for *I*, and so we translate, *I praise the daughters* **of that** [woman]. R. 26.

*** Note.—The following is a very good **test** for **suus** and **eius**: If **his, her**, etc., can be turned into **that man's, that woman's**, etc., **eius**, etc. (**not** suus), must be used.

Thus, I praise **her** (= **that woman's**) daughter [**eius** filiam]. In *the queen praises* **her** *daughters*, if **her** means the **queen's** suus is used by R. 28. If, however, **her** means **that woman's**, eius is used.

Remember that **suus** is an adjective and agrees in number, gender and case with the noun it is used with; **eius**, etc., are not adjectives, but the **genitive cases** of **is, ea, id**, and they agree with the words they stand for in number and gender.

The women are brave; I praise **their** constancy — Feminae fortes sunt; **earum** constantiam laudo

(*c*) In cases like *Cæsar and his friend* **eius** is always used.[1]

Cæsar and **his** friend — Caesar et **eius** amicus

Exercise 44.

Viva voce. Translate the following, using **suus** (R. 28):—

his friends (acc.)	their garden (acc.)	his arrows (acc.)
of his friends	their bodies	his slaves (acc.)
her brother (acc.)	their mother (acc.)	his swords (acc.)
her horses (acc.)	of their sister	his shields (acc.)

A. 1. Pueri matrem suam laudant. 2. Puella aegra est; eius mater tristis est. 3. Dux milites laudat; *eorum*[2] liberis pecuniam dat. 4. In horto sunt multae arbores; *earum*[2]

[1] *Cæsar and his friend are here* means *Cæsar is here and his friend is here.* Thus *his* is in one sentence and refers to the subject of another, and so does not fall under R. 28.

[2] What words do these words refer to? Explain their gender.

fructus bonus est. 5. Dux suos (R. 15) laudat. 6. Homo stultissimus sua (R. 15 (*b*)) semper laudat. 7. Insula est magna; eius incolae sunt nautae. 8. Verba stultorum sibi grata sunt.

B. 1. My brothers always praise their friends. 2. Our plans are known to our companions. 3. The girl loves her father and her mother, her sisters and her brothers. 4. The slave loves his children. 5. The islands are in the great sea; their inhabitants are very bold. 6. Your words, O Claudius, are not always wise. 7. The hunter wounds the lion with his spear. 8. Claudius sends his [men] into Italy. 9. Claudius praises the girl and her companions. 10. The boys and their companions are bold and brave.

52. THE VERB.

Latin verbs are divided into **four** classes or **conjugations** according to the ending of the **present infinitive active.**

1st conjugation ending in	**-āre, ămāre**	*to love*
2nd conjugation ,,	**-ēre, mŏnēre**	*to advise*
3rd conjugation ,,	**-ĕre, rĕgĕre**	*to rule*
4th conjugation ,,	**-īre, audīre**	*to hear*

53. Verbs have four principal parts, from which the various tenses, moods, persons, numbers, etc., are obtained by altering the endings.

54. The principal parts of a verb are:—

(1) The **present indicative** (*ămo*).
(2) The **present infinitive** (*ămāre*).
(3) The **perfect indicative** (*ămāvi*).
(4) The **supine**[1] (*ămātum*).

Present tense of **ămō.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ăm-o, *I love* or *am loving*	**ăm-āmŭs,** *we love* or *are loving*
ăm-ās, *thou lovest* or *art loving*	**ăm-ātĭs,** *you love* or *are loving*
ăm-ăt, *he loves* or *is loving*	**ăm-ant,** *they love* or *are loving*

It will be seen that the endings are obtained by changing the final *-o* into *-ās, -ăt,* etc.

[1] The *supine* in *-um*, as will be explained later, is only used to denote purpose after verbs of motion; the *supine* in *-u* is only used after certain adjectives, *e.g.*, hard, easy, etc.

Rule 29.—In Latin there is no continuous[1] form of the tense. **Amo** means *I love* and *I am loving.*

Rule 30.—The subject pronouns of verbs are not expressed unless they are very emphatic. (We) love = *amamus.*

Exercise 45.

A. Write out the present tense of **culpo,** *I blame;* **orno,** *I adorn;* **do,** *I give.* (See footnote 1, p. 63.)

B. Give the Latin for:—

we praise	they give	we delight	he ploughs
they praise	I give	we lay waste	he wounds
thou praisest	thou givest	we adorn	thou praisest
he wounds	thou blamest	you adorn	we plough
we wound	they blame	you delight	we give
they wound	he delights	you wound	you give

C. Put into English:—

ornamus	aratis	das	dătis
ornas	vastamus	culpas	culpamus
delectant	vastant	culpatis	vulnerat
aro	dant	laudamus	vasto

Imperfect tense of **ămo.**	*Future tense of* **ămo.**
ăm-ābam, *I was loving*	**ăm-ābo,** *I shall love*
ăm-ābās, *thou wast loving*	**ăm-ābĭs,** *thou wilt love*
ăm-ābăt, *he was loving*	**ăm-ābĭt,** *he will love*
ăm-ābāmŭs, *we were loving*	**ăm-ābĭmŭs,** *we shall love*
ăm-ābātĭs, *you were loving*	**ăm-ābĭtĭs,** *you will love*
ăm-ābant, *they were loving*	**ăm-ābunt,** *they will love*

The imperfect endings of *am-o* are got by changing the *-o* into *-ābam,* etc.; the future by changing *-o* into *-ābo,* etc.

Rule 31.—The **imperfect tense,** *e.g.,* amabam, besides meaning *I was loving,* also means **I used-to-love.**

[1] I *write* is present tense, I *am writing* is also present; but as the latter lays stress on the fact that the action is **continuing** at the time mentioned, *I am writing* is said to be **present continuous tense.**

Exercise 46.

(1) Write out imperfect and future of *laudo, aro* and *do*.

(2) Put into Latin :—

he was blaming[1]	they were pointing out	they were overcoming
we shall blame	we shall lay waste	they were entering
they were adorning	we are laying waste	I was entering
I shall adorn	we were laying waste	I was giving
you will delight	he was ploughing	I shall give
I was delighting	he will plough	I shall point out

A. 1. Nauta agricolam culpabat. 2. Galli Romanos superabunt. 3. Scipio insulam superabat. 4. Agricola locum militibus monstrabat. 5. Hieme agricolae agros arabunt. 6. Dux urbem cras intrabit. 7. Romani fines hostium vastabunt. 8. Monstrabimus urbem pulcherrimam militibus. 9. Cur, miles, ducem culpabas? 10. Priore bello Romani ex equis (Ex. 34, A. 2) pugnabant (R. 31).

B. 1. Thou wilt overcome the Gauls. 2. The boys were pointing out the place to the leader. 3. The mother will adorn the girl with a beautiful garment. 4. The girls were adorning the temple with flowers. 5. Why were you not ploughing the fertile valley? 6. [We] shall give rewards to the soldiers. 7. They were laying-waste the territories of the Gauls. 8. The soldiers were entering the city. 9. The diligent husbandman will plough [his] land. 10. The Gauls used-to-fight (R. 31) in (= out of) chariots.

55. When the verb means that an action is completed at the time referred to, the tense is said to be **perfect**. Thus I *write* is present; I *have written*, meaning that the action is completed, is perfect.

There are three perfects corresponding to the present, imperfect and future.

---

[1] The pupil should first say what the tense of the English is.

Simple Tenses.	*Perfect Tenses.*
Present—*I love*	**Present perfect** or **perfect**—*I have loved*
Imperfect—*I was loving*	**Past perfect** or **pluperfect**—*I had loved*
Future—*I shall love*	**Future perfect**—*I shall have loved*

NOTE.—**Have** is the sign of the **perfect**; **had** of the **pluperfect**; **shall have** of the **future perfect.**

56. In Latin verbs all perfect tenses are got by adding different endings to the perfect stem. In the same verb this perfect stem is found in all the perfect tenses.

Verbs like **ămo** form the **perfect stem** by changing **-o** into **-āv.** Thus **ăm-o, ămāv-**; **laudō-, laudāv-.**

NOTE.—The perfect of **do,** *I give,* is **dĕd-i.**[1]

The perfect tenses of **ămo.** *Perfect stem* **ámāv-.**

PERFECT.[2]

ămāv-ī, *I have loved* or *I loved*
ămāv-istī, *thou hast loved* or *thou lovedst*
ămāv-ĭt, *he has loved* or *he loved*
ămāv-ĭmŭs, *we have loved* or *we loved*
ămāv-istĭs, *you have loved* or *you loved*
ămāv-ērunt or **ămāv-ērĕ,** *they have loved* or *they loved*

PLUPERFECT.[2]	FUTURE PERFECT.[2]
ămāv-ĕram, *I had loved*	**ămāv-ĕro,** *I shall have loved*
ămāv-ĕrās, *thou hadst loved*	**ămāv-ĕrĭs,** *thou wilt have loved*
ămāv-ĕrăt, *he had loved*	**ămāv-ĕrĭt,** *he will have loved*
ămāv-ĕrāmŭs, *we had loved*	**ămāv-ĕrĭmŭs,** *we shall have loved*
ămāv-ĕrātĭs, *you had loved*	**ămāv-ĕrĭtĭs,** *you will have loved*
ămāv-ĕrant *they had loved*	**ămāv-ĕrint,** *they will have loved*

Rule 32 (*a*).—The **perfect tense** has two meanings. Thus **amavi** means **I have loved** and **I loved.**

[1] This is the only verb which has a **short ă** in the infinitive (**dăre**). The **short ă** (the stem vowel) occurs throughout the verb, except in the 2nd person singular present indicative (**dās**) and in the imperative singular (**dā**). Thus, dămus, dătis; dăbo, etc.; dăbam, etc.

[2] The endings **-i, -istī,** etc., should first be learned separately. They occur in these tenses of all Latin verbs.

Rule 32 (*b*).—When *I loved* is made negative it becomes *I* **did** *not* **love.** *I* **did** *not* **love** means *I* **loved** *not*, and *did love* must be translated generally by the perfect tense.

EXERCISE **47.**

(1) Give the **perfect stem** of the following verbs:—

culpo	vasto	orno	do
porto	aro	supero	regno
vulnero	delecto	intro	paro

(2) Say the **endings** of the pluperfect and future perfect.

(3) Turn into Latin:—

he had carried	they have dwelt
we have fought	they prepared
I shall have prepared	he will have avoided
you had avoided	we carried
you had carried	we prepared
he has reigned	we avoided

A. 1. Iam nautae aurum in templum portaverant. 2. Galli strenue pugnavērunt. 3. Multos annos (R. 14 (*b*)) in Britannia regnaverat. 4. Dux milites laudabat quod Gallos bello superaverant. 5. Priore anno in Gallia strenue pugnavimus. 6. Convocavērunt sapientes (R. 15 and 30) quod in magno periculo sunt. 7. Insulae incolae non in oppidis habitavērunt. 8. Cervus crura culpaverat; cornua laudaverat. 9. Duces servis arma dedērunt quod erant in magno periculo. 10. Consul militum impetum laudabat.

B. 1. By [his] long legs the stag had avoided many dangers. 2. The allies have prepared arms. 3. They had dwelt for many years in the island. 4. [We] have carried the swords into the citadel. 5. The Gauls dwelt in the woods. 6. [In] many battles we had overcome the Romans. 7. He was praising the leader because our men had fought vigorously. 8. The consul called together [his] allies because the enemy (plural) were preparing arms. 9. Already you have overcome the enemy, soldiers. 10. The Romans did not always surpass (= overcome) the Gauls [in] boldness.

Subjunctive Mood of **amo.**

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
ăm-em, *I may love*	**ămāv-ĕrim**,[1] *I may have loved*
am-ēs, *thou mayst love*	**amāv-ĕrīs**, *thou mayst have loved*
am-ĕt, *he may love*	**amāv-ĕrīt**, *he may have loved*
am-ēmus, *we may love*	**amāv-ĕrĭmŭs**, *we may have loved*
am-ētĭs, *you may love*	**amāv-ĕrĭtĭs**, *you may have loved*
am-ent, *they may love*	**amāv-ĕrint**, *they may have loved*
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
ăm-ārem, *I might love*	**ămāv-issem**,[1] *I might have loved*
am-ārēs, *thou mightest love*	**amāv-issēs**, *thou mightest have loved*
am-ārĕt, *he might love*	**amāv-issĕt**, *he might have loved*
am-ārēmus, *we might love*	**amāv-issēmus**, *we might have loved*
am-ārētĭs, *you might love*	**amāv-issētis**, *you might have loved*
am-ārent, *they might love*	**amāv-issent**, *they might have loved*

Rule 33.—The **imperfect subjunctive** is always obtained by adding the endings *-m*, *-s*, etc., to the **infinitive.**

Rule 34.—In English **may** is the sign of the **present subjunctive**; **might** (or **should**) is the sign of the **imperfect subjunctive**; **may have** of the **perfect subjunctive**; and **might have** (or **should have**) of the **pluperfect subjunctive.** But the Latin subjunctive is often used when the corresponding English is indicative.

57. The subjunctive in **clauses of purpose**:—

He praises the soldier **that he may fight well**; the words in thick type denote **purpose** and they form a **clause of purpose**, the verb being in the subjunctive.

In clauses of purpose **that** is translated by **ut**; **that . . . not** by **nē.**

(*a*) He praises the soldier **that** he **may fight** well — Militem laudat **ut** bene **pugnet**

(*b*) He praises the soldier **that** he **may not fight** badly — Militem laudat **ne** mălē **pugnet**

[1] Notice that the stem amav- is still the same as in the perfect tenses of the indicative. See p. 56.

58. In negative clauses of purpose **lest** is sometimes used instead of **that . . . not**. **Lest** is translated by **ne**, and always takes the subjunctive.

59. The tense used in the subjunctive always depends on the tense of the principal verb. For this purpose all tenses are divided into two classes—(*a*) tenses which do not refer to the past, often called **primary tenses**; (*b*) tenses which do refer to the past, called **historic** or **past tenses**.

(*a*) *Primary Tenses.*	(*b*) *Historic Tenses.*
Present indicative	Imperfect indicative
Future indicative	Pluperfect indicative
Imperative mood	Perfect *without* have (R. 32 (*a*))
Perfect *with* have (R. 32 (*a*))	

Rule 35. Sequence of tenses.[1]—The **present subjunctive** is used after **primary tenses**; the **imperfect subjunctive** is used after **historic tenses**.[2]

Thus (*a*) He **fights** that he **may** conquer.

(*b*) He **fought** that he **might** conquer.

Rule 36.—Since the perfect indicative has two meanings (R. 32 (*a*)) it can be followed by either present subjunctive or imperfect subjunctive, the one used depending entirely on the meaning of the perfect.

(*a*) He *has fought* (**pugnavit**) that he *may overcome* (**superet**).

(*b*) He *fought* (**pugnavit**) that he *might overcome* (**superaret**).

Exercise 48.

Viva voce :—

A. he may blame	we may fight	I may plough
we may blame	we may enter	I might plough
they may lay waste	we may give	you may delight
he might give	they might overcome	you might delight
they might give	they might carry	they may adorn
we may give	they might avoid	they might adorn

Before translating B explain how R. 35 on the sequence of tenses is observed in the italicised verbs.

[1] *I.e.*, the way in which one tense follows another.

[2] This rule will be amplified later. It is given here in this incomplete form in order that the pupil may see from the very first how one tense depends on another.

B. 1. He *fights* that the leader *may praise*. 2. He *was fighting* that the leader *might praise*. 3. We *shall plough* that we *may prepare* corn. 4. We *had ploughed* that we *might prepare* corn. 5. You *have prepared* arms that you *may fight*. 6. You *were preparing* arms that you *might fight*. 7. He *will fight* that he *may obtain* (= prepare) booty. 8. He *was fighting* that he *might obtain* booty. 9. The leader *has prepared*[1] arms that they *may set free* [their] friends. 10. The leader *prepared*[1] arms that they *might set free* [their] friends.

Exercise 49.

A. 1. Arma servis dat ut pugnent. 2. Legati in urbem festinabant ut victoriam nuntiarent. 3. Dux milites laudabat ne pericula vitarent. 4. Consul praemia militibus dabit ut strenue pugnent. 5. Agricola frumentum dat ne Galli agros vastent. 6. Senex materiam parabat ut domum aedificaret. 7. Consul exercitum revocavit ut in Britannia pugnet. 8. Galli arma parabant ut contra Romanos pugnarent. 9. Imperator legatos mittit ut omnia regi nuntient. 10. Nautae flores in templum portaverant ut puellae statuas ornarent.

B. 1. Soldiers will fight vigorously that they may obtain (= prepare) great booty. 2. The allies were fighting vigorously that the leader might not blame them. 3. We have called together the allies that the enemy may not overcome us. 4. The farmer had praised the soldiers that he might avoid the evils of war. 5. The mother is preparing beautiful garments that she may delight the maidens. 6. The leader gave money to the old man that he might not show the place to the enemy. 7. Cæsar recalled the soldiers out-of (*ex*) Italy that they might fight in Gaul. 8. He has hastened into the town that he may announce the victory to the citizens. 9. We shall fight vigorously that we may set free our children. 10. We shall call together the allies that the Gauls may not lay waste our lands.

[1] See Rule 36.

The **Imperative Mood** *of* **Amo.**

PRESENT TENSE.

ăm-ā, *love (thou)*	**ăm-ātĕ**, *love (ye)*

FUTURE OR LEGAL IMPERATIVE.

ăm-āto, *thou must love*	**ăm-ātōtĕ**, *you must love*
ăm-āto, *he must love*	**ăm-anto**, *they must love*

60. What is called the future imperative is chiefly used in wills and legal documents. It is called future because it usually implies that the action referred to will be done not in the immediate present, but at some future time.

61. *Rules for the imperative :—*

Rule 37.—(*a*) The imperative mood expresses a **command.**

(*b*) In all commands the word for *not* is **nē.**

NOTE.—A negative command is often called a **prohibition.**

(*c*) When the command is 2nd person and **negative** it is translated[1] by **nē** and the **perfect subjunctive.**[2]

Praise the king	**Laudā** regem
Do not praise the king	**Nē** regem **laudāvĕris**

Do not praise, do not blame, etc., is to be translated therefore by the **perfect subjunctive.**

(*d*) When a command is 1st or 3rd person it is translated by the **present subjunctive.** Thus Let us praise = may we praise, Let him praise = may he praise.

Let us praise the king	Regem **laudemus**
Let him not hasten	**Nē festinet**

---

[1] That is in prose. In poetry *ne* is sometimes used with the ordinary imperative.

[2] Other ways of translating a negative command will be explained later. The explanation of this use of the perfect subjunctive is as follows: instead of bluntly saying *Do not praise*, the Romans said in a half apologetic way *May you not have praised!*

Exercise 50.

Rule 38.—Whenever *you* is used in speaking of one person always translate it by **thou** in Latin, making the verb singular.

Put into Latin[1]:—

call	do not carry	let him not wound	enter
blame	do not prepare	let him not give	do not enter
give	do not avoid	let us not give	let us enter
plough	let him plough	you must not enter	let them enter
point out	let us adorn	thou must avoid	let them not give
fight	let us fight	let him dwell	do not give

A. 1. Da vinum aegris (R. 15). 2. Monstrate locum exploratoribus. 3. Statuam floribus ornemus. 4. Ne parentes culpaveritis. 5. Parate arma, milites. 6. Ne puer in horto ambulet. 7. Arate vestros agros, agricolae. 8. Vitate belli mala consiliis bonis. 9. Virgines templum floribus ornanto. 10. Ne urbem nocte intraveris.

B. 1. Do not show the way to the spy. 2. O slaves, carry the corn into the city. 3. Do not give the booty to the slothful soldier. 4. Let us call together our [men]. 5. Prepare arms, Gauls, that you may overcome the Romans. 6. Let the girls[2] adorn [their] mother with a beautiful garment. 7. Recall (R. 38) the army, great consul, that it may fight in Italy. 8. O ambassadors, hasten into the city; announce the victory to the consul. 9. Let us prepare wood that we may build a house. 10. Do not praise the deeds of the wicked (R. 15).

---

[1] Where there is nothing to show whether the command in this part of the exercise is singular or plural, translate both ways for practice.

[2] When *let* is changed to *may* (R. 37 (*d*)) what case is girls? Who does the action? (§ 4.)

FIRST OR -A CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

ăm-o, ăm-ārĕ, āmāv-ī, ăm-ātum, *to love.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
am-o, *I love* or *am loving*	**amāv-ī,** *I have loved* *
am-ās, *thou lovest* or *art loving*	**amāv-istī,** *thou hast loved* *
am-ăt, *he loves* or *is loving*	**amāv-ĭt,** *he has loved* *
am-āmŭs, *we love* or *are loving*	**amāv-ĭmŭs,** *we have loved* *
am-ātĭs, *you love* or *are loving*	**amāv-istĭs,** *you have loved* *
am-ant, *they love* or *are loving*	**amāv-ērunt** or **amav-ērĕ,** *they have loved* *

* Or *I loved, thou lovedst, he loved, we loved, you loved, they loved.*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
am-ābam, *I was loving*	**amāv-ĕram,** *I had loved*
am-ābās, *thou wast loving*	**amāv-ĕrās,** *thou hadst loved*
am-ābăt, *he was loving*	**amāv-ĕrăt,** *he had loved*
am-ābāmŭs, *we were loving*	**amāv-ĕrāmŭs,** *we had loved*
am-ābātĭs, *you were loving*	**amāv-ĕrātĭs,** *you had loved*
am-ābant, *they were loving*	**amāv-ĕrant,** *they had loved*

FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
am-ābo, *I shall love*	**amāv-ĕro,** *I shall have loved*
am-ābĭs, *thou wilt love*	**amāv-ĕrĭs,** *thou wilt have loved*
am-ābĭt, *he will love*	**amāv-ĕrĭt,** *he will have loved*
am-ābĭmŭs, *we shall love*	**amāv-ĕrĭmŭs,** *we shall have loved*
am-ābĭtĭs, *you will love*	**amāv-ĕrĭtĭs,** *you will have loved*
am-ābunt, *they will love*	**amāv-ĕrint,** *they will have loved*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
am-em, *I may love*	**amāv-ĕrim**, *I may have loved*
am-ēs, *thou mayst love*	**amāv-ĕrĭs**, *thou mayst have loved*
am-ĕt, *he may love*	**amāv-ĕrĭt**, *he may have loved*
am-ēmŭs, *we may love*	**amāv-ĕrĭmŭs**, *we may have loved*
am-ētĭs, *you may love*	**amāv-ĕrĭtĭs**, *you may have loved*
am-ent, *they may love*	**amāv-ĕrint**, *they may have loved*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
am-ārem, *I might * love*	**amāv-issem**, *I should have loved*
am-ārēs, *thou mightest love*	**amāv-issēs**, *thou wouldst have loved*
am-ārĕt, *he might love*	**amāv-issĕt**, *he would have loved*
am-ārēmŭs, *we might love*	**amāv-issēmŭs**, *we should have loved*
am-ārētĭs, *you might love*	**amāv-issētĭs**, *you would have loved*
am-ārent, *they might love*	**amāv-issent**, *they would have loved*

* Or *should*.

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT TENSE.	FUTURE OR LEGAL TENSE.
	am-āto, *thou must love*
	am-āto, *he must love*
am-ā, *love thou*	
am-ātĕ, *love ye*	**am-ātōtĕ**, *ye must love*
	am-antō, *they must love*

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
Pres. **am-ārĕ**, *to love*	Acc. **am-andum**, *the loving*
Perf. **amāv-isse**, *to have loved*	Gen. **am-andī**, *of loving*
Fut. **am-ātūrŭs esse**, *to be about to love*	Dat. **am-andō**, *for loving*
	Abl. **am-andō**, *by loving*

SUPINES.	PARTICIPLES.
am-ātum, (*in order*) *to love*	Pres. **am-ans**, **-antis**, *loving*
am-ātū, *in loving*	Fut. **am-ātūrŭs**, **-a**, **-um**, *about to love*

SECOND OR -E CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

mŏn-ĕo, mŏn-ērĕ, mŏnu-ī, mŏn-ĭtum, *to advise.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
mŏn-eo, *I advise* or *am advising*	**mŏnu-ī,** *I have advised* or *advised*
mŏn-ēs, *thou advisest* *	**mŏnu-istī,** *thou hast advised* ‡
mŏn-ĕt, *he advises* or *is advising*	**mŏnu-ĭt,** *he has advised* §
mŏn-ēmŭs, *we advise* †	**mŏnu-ĭmŭs,** *we have advised* §
mŏn-ētĭs, *you advise* †	**mŏnu-istĭs,** *you have advised* §
mŏn-ent, *they advise* †	**mŏnu-ērunt** or **mŏnu-ērĕ** } *they have advised* §

* Or *art advising* † Or *are advising.*
‡ Or *advisedst.* § Or *advised.*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
mŏn-ēbam, *I was advising*	**mŏnu-ĕram,** *I had advised*
mŏn-ēbās, *thou wast advising*	**mŏnu-ĕrās,** *thou hadst advised*
mŏn-ēbăt, *he was advising*	**mŏnu-ĕrăt,** *he had advised*
mŏn-ēbāmŭs, *we were advising*	**mŏnu-ĕrāmŭs,** *we had advised*
mŏn-ēbātĭs, *you were advising*	**mŏnu-ĕrātĭs,** *you had advised*
mŏn-ēbant, *they were advising*	**mŏnu-ĕrant,** *they had advised*

FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
mŏn-ēbo, *I shall advise*	**mŏnu-ĕro,** *I shall have advised*
mŏn-ēbĭs, *thou wilt advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭs,** *thou wilt have advised*
mŏn-ēbĭt, *he will advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭt,** *he will have advised*
mŏn-ēbĭmŭs, *we shall advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭmŭs,** *we shall have advised*
mŏn-ēbĭtĭs, *you will advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭtĭs,** *you will have advised*
mŏn-ēbunt, *they will advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrint,** *they will have advised*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
mŏn-eam, *I may advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrim**, *I may have advised*
mŏn-eās, *thou mayst advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭs**, *thou mayst have advised*
mŏn-eăt, *he may advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭt**, *he may have advised*
mŏn-eāmŭs, *we may advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭmŭs**, *we may have advised*
mŏn-eātĭs, *you may advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrĭtĭs**, *you may have advised*
mŏn-eant, *they may advise*	**mŏnu-ĕrint**, *they may have advised*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
mŏn-ērem *I might* advise*	**mŏnu-issem**, *I should have advised*
mŏn-ērēs, *thou mightest advise*	**mŏnu-issēs**, *thou wouldst have advised*
mŏn-ērĕt, *he might advise*	**mŏnu-issĕt**, *he would have advised*
mŏn-ērēmŭs, *we might advise*	**mŏnu-issēmŭs**, *we should have advised*
mŏn-ērētĭs, *you might advise*	**mŏnu-issētĭs**, *you would have advised*
mŏn-ērent, *they might advise*	**mŏnu-issent**, *they would have advised*

* Or *should*.

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	FUTURE OR LEGAL.
mŏn-ē, *advise thou*	**mŏn-ētō**, *thou must advise*
	mŏn-ētō, *he must advise*
mŏn-ētĕ, *advise ye*	**mŏn-ētōtĕ**, *ye must advise*
	mŏn-entō, *they must advise*

Infinitive.

Pres. **mŏn-ēre**, *to advise*
Perf. **mŏnu-isse**, *to have advised*
Fut. **mŏn-ĭtūrŭs esse**, *to be about to advise*

Gerund.

Acc. **mŏn-endum**, *the advising*
Gen. **mŏn-endī**, *of advising*
Dat. **mŏn-endō**, *for advising*
Abl. **mŏn-endō**, *by advising*

Supines.

mŏn-ĭtum, (*in order*) *to advise*
mŏn-ĭtū, *in advising*

Participles.

Pres. **mŏn-ens, -entis**, *advising*
Fut. **mŏn-ĭtūrŭs, -a, -um**, *about to advise*

THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

Consonant *or* **-U**[1] *Conjugation.*

rĕg-o, rĕg-ĕrĕ, rex-ī, rec-tum, *to rule.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
rĕg-o, *I rule* or *am ruling*	**rex-ī,** *I have ruled* or *I ruled*
rĕg-ĭs, *thou rulest* or *art ruling*	**rex-istī,** *thou hast ruled* *
rĕg-ĭt, *he rules* or *is ruling*	**rex-ĭt,** *he has ruled* or *he ruled*
rĕg-ĭmŭs, *we rule* or *are ruling*	**rex-ĭmŭs,** *we have ruled* †
rĕg-ĭtĭs, *you rule* or *are ruling*	**rex-istĭs,** *you have ruled* ‡
rĕg-unt, *they rule* or *are ruling*	**rex-ērunt** or **rex-ērĕ** } *they have ruled* or *they ruled*

* Or *thou ruledst.*
† Or *we ruled.*
‡ Or *you ruled.*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
rĕg-ēbam, *I was ruling*	**rex-ĕram,** *I had ruled*
rĕg-ēbās, *thou wast ruling*	**rex-ĕrās,** *thou hadst ruled*
rĕg-ēbăt, *he was ruling*	**rex-ĕrăt,** *he had ruled*
rĕg-ēbāmŭs, *we were ruling*	**rex-ĕrāmŭs,** *we had ruled*
rĕg-ēbātĭs, *you were ruling*	**rex-ĕrātĭs,** *you had ruled*
rĕg-ēbant, *they were ruling*	**rex-ĕrant,** *they had ruled*

FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
rĕg-am, *I shall rule*	**rex-ĕro,** *I shall have ruled*
rĕg-ēs, *thou wilt rule*	**rex-ĕrĭs,** *thou wilt have ruled*
rĕg-ĕt, *he will rule*	**rex-ĕrĭt,** *he will have ruled*
rĕg-ēmŭs, *we shall rule*	**rex-ĕrĭmŭs,** *we shall have ruled*
rĕg-ētĭs, *you will rule*	**rex-ĕrĭtĭs,** *you will have ruled*
rĕg-ent, *they will rule*	**rex-ĕrint,** *they will have ruled*

[1] Some verbs of the third conjugation have **u** before **-ĕre,** *e.g.,* **mĭnu-ĕre.**

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
rĕg-am, *I may rule*	**rex-ĕrim,** *I may have ruled*
rĕg-ās, *thou mayest rule*	**rex-ĕrĭs,** *thou mayest have ruled*
rĕg-ăt, *he may rule*	**rex-ĕrĭt,** *he may have ruled*
rĕg-āmŭs, *we may rule*	**rex-ĕrĭmŭs,** *we may have ruled*
rĕg-ātĭs, *you may rule*	**rex-ĕrĭtĭs,** *you may have ruled*
rĕg-ant, *they may rule*	**rex-ĕrint,** *they may have ruled*
IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
rĕg-ĕrem, *I might* rule*	**rex-issem,** *I should have ruled*
rĕg-ĕrēs, *thou mighest rule*	**rex-issēs,** *thou wouldst have ruled*
rĕg-ĕrĕt, *he might rule*	**rex-issĕt,** *he would have ruled*
rĕg-ĕrēmŭs, *we might rule*	**rex-issēmŭs,** *we should have ruled*
rĕg-ĕrētĭs, *you might rule*	**rex-issētĭs,** *you would have ruled*
rĕg-ĕrent, *they might rule*	**rex-issent,** *they would have ruled*

* Or *should.*

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	FUTURE OR LEGAL.
rĕg-ĕ, *rule thou*	**rĕg-ĭtō,** *thou must rule*
	rĕg-ĭtō, *he must rule*
rĕg-ĭtĕ, *rule ye*	**rĕg-ĭtōtĕ,** *ye must rule*
	rĕg-untō, *they must rule*

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
Pres. **rĕg-ĕrĕ,** *to rule*	Acc. **rĕg-endum,** *the ruling*
Perf. **rex-issĕ,** *to have ruled*	Gen. **rĕg-endī,** *of ruling*
Fut. **rec-tūrŭs esse,** *to be about to rule*	Dat. **rĕg-endō,** *for ruling*
	Abl. **rĕg-endō,** *by ruling*

SUPINES.	PARTICIPLES.
rec-tum, (*in order*) *to rule*	Pres. **rĕg-ens, -entis,** *ruling*
rec-tū, *in ruling*	Fut. **rec-tūrŭs, -a, -um,** *about to rule*

FOURTH OR -I CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

aud-io, aud-īrĕ, aud-īvī, aud-ītum, *to hear.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
aud-io, *I hear* or *am hearing*	**audīv-ī,** *I have heard* or *I heard*
aud-īs, *thou hearest* *	**audīv-istī,** *thou hast heard* †
aud-ĭt, *he hears* or *is hearing*	**audīv-ĭt,** *he has heard* or *he heard*
aud-īmŭs, *we hear*	**audīv-ĭmŭs,** *we have heard* ‡
aud-ītĭs, *you hear* or *are hearing*	**audīv-istĭs,** *you have heard* §
aud-ĭunt, *they hear*	**audīv-ērunt** or **audīv-ērĕ** *they have heard* or *they heard*

* Or *art hearing.*
† Or *thou heardst.*
‡ Or *we heard.*
§ Or *you heard*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
aud-iēbam, *I was hearing*	**audīv-ĕram,** *I had heard*
aud-iēbās, *thou wast hearing*	**audīv-ĕrās,** *thou hadst heard*
aud-iēbăt, *he was hearing*	**audīv-ĕrăt,** *he had heard*
aud-iēbāmŭs, *we were hearing*	**audīv-ĕrāmŭs,** *we had heard*
aud-iēbātĭs, *you were hearing*	**audīv-ĕrātĭs,** *you had heard*
aud-iēbant, *they were hearing*	**audīv-ĕrant,** *they had heard*

FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
aud-iam, *I shall hear*	**audīv-ĕro,** *I shall have heard*
aud-iēs, *thou wilt hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭs,** *thou wilt have heard*
aud-iĕt, *he will hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭt,** *he will have heard*
aud-iēmŭs, *we shall hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭmŭs,** *we shall have heard*
aud-iētĭs, *you will hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭtĭs,** *you will have heard*
aud-ient, *they will hear*	**audīv-ĕrint,** *they will have heard*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
aud-iam, *I may hear*	**audīv-ĕrim**, *I may have heard*
aud-iās, *thou mayest hear*	**audīv-ĕrīs**, *thou mayest have heard*
aud-iăt, *he may hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭt**, *he may have heard*
aud-iāmŭs, *we may hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭmŭs**, *we may have heard*
aud-iātĭs, *you may hear*	**audīv-ĕrĭtĭs**, *you may have heard*
aud-iant, *they may hear*	**audīv-ĕrint**, *they may have heard*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
aud-īrem, *I might* hear*	**audīv-issem**, *I should have heard*
aud-īrēs, *thou mightest hear*	**audīv-issēs**, *thou wouldst have heard*
aud-īrĕt, *he might hear*	**audīv-issĕt**, *he would have heard*
aud-īrēmŭs, *we might hear*	**audīv-issēmŭs**, *we should have heard*
aud-īrētĭs, *you might hear*	**audīv-issētĭs**, *you would have heard*
aud-īrent, *they might hear*	**audīv-issent**, *they would have heard*

* Or *should*.

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	FUTURE OR LEGAL.
	aud-ītō, *thou must hear*
	aud-ītō, *he must hear*
aud-ī, *hear thou*	
aud-ītĕ, *hear ye*	**aud-ītōtĕ**, *you must hear*
	aud-iuntō, *they must hear*

INFINITIVE.	GERUND.
Pres. **aud-īrĕ**, *to hear*	Acc. **aud-iendum**, *the hearing*
Perf. **audīv-isse**, *to have heard*	Gen. **aud-iendī**, *of hearing*
	Dat. **aud-iendō**, *for hearing*
Fut. **aud-ītūrŭs esse**, *to be about to hear*	Abl. **aud-iendō**, *by hearing*

SUPINES.	PARTICIPLES.
aud-ītum, (*in order*) *to hear*	Pres. **aud-iens, -ientis**, *hearing*
aud-ītū, *in hearing*	Fut. **aud-īturus, -a, -um**, *about to hear*

62. *Contraction of Perfect Endings.*

When the **perfect stem** ends in **-v** there is often contraction.

(*a*) In the **first conjugation vi** or **ve** is often omitted before **-is** and **-er**. Thus

ămāvistī becomes **amāsti**
ămāvērunt ,, **amārunt**

(*b*) In the **second conjugation** this also occurs sometimes with perfects in **-evi.**

implēvissem becomes **implessem.**

(*c*) In the **fourth conjugation v** or **vi** is often omitted, especially before **-is.**

audīvisti becomes **audiisti** or **audīsti**
audivissem ,, **audiissem** ,, **audīssem**

Similarly **audīvit** becomes **audiit**
audīvērunt ,, **audiērunt**
audīvero ,, **audiĕro**, etc.
audīveram ,, **audiĕram**, etc.
audīverim ,, **audiĕrim**, etc.
audīvissem ,, **audiissem**, etc.

Rule 39.—When two nouns of similar meaning denoting things which **often go together**) are joined by *and*, **-que** is used instead of **et**, and it is joined on to the end of the second noun.

Flowers **and** trees Flores arbores**que**

Rule 39 (*a*).—*He gives* **me** *money* = *He gives money* **to me.** After verbs like *give, owe, offer, set*, etc., **to** (the sign of the **dative case**) is often omitted in English. In Latin the **dative** must always be used in such cases.

He gives **the boy** money **Puero** pecuniam dat.

Exercise 51.

The Present, Imperfect and Future of **moneo.**

he has[1]	we were fearing	you restrain
we shall have	thou fearest	you offer
they had (imperf.)	he will fear	they will offer
we owe	we were teaching	thou wilt teach
I was owing	we shall teach	he was teaching
they will owe	we are teaching	they are teaching

A. 1. Caesar in conspectu urbis castra habebat.[2] 2. Omnia beneficia deis debemus. 3. Socii Romanis frumentum praebebant. 4. Animalia asinum timebant quod leonis pellem habebat. 5. Vix militum iram dux coercet. 6. Docemus pueros frigus tolerare. 7. Galli oppida vicosque habent. 8. Puerum multis verbis coercebimus. 9. Britanniae incolae auxilium Gallis praebent. 10. Agricolam verbis ferocibus milites terrebunt.

B. 1. He owes me much money (R. 22). 2. They will have [their] camp there. 3. We were offering food to the girl. 4. The farmers have fields and gardens (R. 39). 5. I shall teach my children to bear heat in summer. 6. The ass terrifies the animals because he has the lion's skin. 7. Who fears the foolish ass? 8. Scarcely does the king restrain the keen soldiers. 9. They will have the camp in that place. 10. We were offering help to [our] allies.

---

[1] The verb *to have* can be used as an auxiliary when it is a sign of the perfect tenses, § 55, *e.g.*, he has ploughed. But it can also be an independent verb, meaning *to possess*, when it is translated by *habeo*.

[2] The imperfect must very often be translated by the simple past *e.g.*, *monebat* = he was advising *or* he advised.

63. The clause introduced by **si** = **if** expresses a **condition.** *If he overcomes the enemy* all will praise him.

Rule 40.—In English *if* is followed by the present even when the future is meant. In Latin **si** must be followed by the **future perfect** [1] or **future** [1] whenever the future is meant.

If he **overcomes** [2] the enemy all men will praise him.

Si hostes **superaverit** [2] omnes eum laudabunt.

The same rule applies to **nisi,** *if not, unless.*

Exercise 52.

The Perfect Tenses of **moneo.**

(1) Write the 3rd person perfect of the following, placing a hyphen between the **perfect stem** and the ending :—

praebeo	teneo	habeo	fleo	compleo
doceo	deleo	debeo	terreo	moveo

(2) I had taught
we shall have taught
they have taught
I shall have held
we have held
you had held
he has wept
we had wept
you have wept
they had destroyed
you will have destroyed
I had moved
we have moved
thou hast moved
thou hast frightened
thou hast destroyed
he will destroy
he will have destroyed

[1] Whether the **future** or **future perfect** is used depends entirely on the sense. *We will go out if the sun* **shines,** *i.e.*, if the sun **shall be shining.** Here the future simple is the correct tense. But *He will repay me if he* **succeeds** means *when he* **shall have succeeded,** and the future perfect must be used in Latin.

[2] The real meaning is: When he *shall have overcome* the enemy all will praise him, *i.e.*, at a future time when the action is finished.

A. 1. Galli in castris se tenuerant. 2. Milites multas urbes deleverunt. 3. Frigus flores parvos delebat. 4. Insulam firmo praesidio tenuimus. 5. Adventus consulis exercitum spe complevit. 6. Decimo anno Graeci Troiam deleverunt. 7. Si vos Romani, foedera tenueritis, nostra foedera tenebimus. 8. Milites fossam aquā compleverunt. 9. Scipio castra trans flumen movebat. 10. Si ventus fructum deleverit agricolae flebunt.

B. 1. They had filled the ditch with stones and trees (R. 39). 2. We have destroyed the towns and villages of the Gauls. 3. If the Romans overcome the Gauls they will destroy [their] village. 4. To-morrow they will move the camp into the plain. 5. The Romans had taught the soldiers (acc.) to bear heat and cold. 6. The consul had filled our men with the hope of booty. 7. He will weep if we restrain (R. 40) him. 8. We were weeping because the Greeks had destroyed our city. 9. Why have you not offered corn to us? 10. If the consul moves the camp the allies will offer corn.

Exercise 53.

The Subjunctive of **moneo** (§§ 57-59 *and R.* 33-36).

Viva voce :—

that he may destroy	that we may not have
that he may weep	that we may not destroy
that we may hold	that you might not weep
that you may move	that he may not frighten
that he might teach	that we might not offer
that he might have	that we may not move

A. 1. Exercitum convocabat ut insulam firmo praesidio tenēret. 2. Milites festinant ut urbem deleant. 3. Castra movemus ut hostes terreamus. 4. Caesar agricolas terrebat ne hostibus frumentum praebērent. 5. Frumentum Caesări praebuerant ut belli mala vitarent. 6. Păremus arma ut servi nos timeant. 7. Graeci socios convocaverunt ut Troiam delerent. 8. Galli auxilium praebebunt ne Caesar oppidum

deleat. 9. Servos terrebimus nē arma părent.[1] 10. Convoca milites ut fossam aquā compleant.

B. 1. We are frightening the farmers that they may **offer** corn. 2. The leader will blame vigorously that he may restrain the soldiers. 3. Scipio was holding the island with a strong garrison that he might frighten the inhabitants. 4. We shall move the camp that the farmers may not fear the horsemen. 5. Prepare arms, citizens, that you may restrain the soldiers. 6. He offers money that the enemy (plural) may not destroy [his] corn. 7. Cæsar has frightened the Gauls that they may not offer help to the enemy (plural). 8. We had destroyed the city that the allies might keep the treaty. 9. We shall have a camp there that we may obtain (= prepare) food. 10. The consul praises that he may fill our men (R. 15) with hope.

Rule 41.—Certain verbs govern the **dative case** in Latin although they have an accusative in English. The commonest of these are:—

pāreo	*I obey*	**plăceo**	*I please*
nŏceo	*I injure*	**displĭceo**	*I displease*

The soldier obeys **the leader** Miles **duci** pāret

NOTE.—Verbs governing the dative are sometimes grouped according to meaning thus: (1) obeying and disobeying, (2) harming and helping, (3) pleasing and displeasing.

EXERCISE 54.

On the Imperative of **mŏneo** *and R.* 37.

Viva voce:—

(1)	teach	let us obey	do not teach	let him obey
	destroy	let us please	do not please	let him have
	weep	let us destroy	do not displease	let him not destroy
	frighten	let us offer	do not fear	do not destroy

[1] It should be noted that first conjugation verbs in the *present subjunctive* greatly resemble the *present indicative* of the 2nd conjugation. *Ne* here shows that *parent* is subjunctive; it comes therefore from *părare*.

(2)

he pleases me	he has obeyed us
I please my father	do not injure the tree
we obey the laws	we shall obey our king
they obey the leaders	he displeases the master
they had obeyed me	obey the wise
do not displease Cæsar	let us obey the king
do not injure the flowers	do not displease us
do not injure me	he has injured the flower

(3) Write[1] in opposite columns (*a*) the present indicative, (*b*) the present subjunctive of the following pairs of verbs: **părо**, 1, *I prepare*, and **pāreo**, 2, *I obey;* **flo**, 1, *I blow*, and **fleo**, 2, *I weep;* **plāco**, 1, *I appease*, and **plăceo**, 2, *I please.*

A. 1. Pāreamus legibus bonis. 2. Milites, complete fossam lapidibus. 3. Ne terrueritis insulae incolas. 4. Lauda regem; imperatori pāre. 5. Castra in campum moveamus. 6. Ne amicis displiceamus. 7. Flete, feminae; milites hortos delent. 8. Frumentum hostibus ne praebueritis. 9. Parete duci ne vos verbis ferocibus coerceat. 10. Animalia pelle leonis, O asine, ne terrueris. 11. Consules militiae summum ius habento; nemini pārento; illis (= *to them*) salus rei publicae suprema lex esto.[2]

B. 1. Let us fill the ditch with water. 2. Let us not displease our parents. 3. Restrain the anger of the soldiers with wise words. 4. Do not move the camp across the river. 5. Hold the town with a strong garrison. 6. Soldiers must obey the general. 7. Frighten the farmers that they may not offer corn to the enemy. 8. The cold has injured my trees. 9. Let us teach boys to bear cold. 10. Do not destroy the town, allies.

---

[1] See footnote, p. 82. Notice the difference of quantity in these pairs of verbs.

[2] This is the future imperative (§ 60) of the verb *to be*, i.e., *let . . .* (it) *be.*

Exercise 55.

On the Present, Imperfect and Future of **rego.**

Rule 42.—When **to** means **motion towards** it is translated by the preposition **ad** with the **accusative.**

He sends the hostages **to** Cæsar Obsides **ad Cæsărem** mittit

Viva voce :—

he was leading	I shall cover	I was sending
we shall lead	thou wast covering	he will send
they are leading	he is covering	they were sending
I shall lead	he was covering	they are sending
he leads	we shall cover	they will send
they were leading	they will cover	you are sending

A. 1. Scipio magnum exercitum in Africam mittet. 2. Consules in Galliam multas legiones ducebant. 3. Puer ad matrem scribebat. 4. Pater pueri corpus pallio tegit. 5. Pueri multos libros legent. 6. Auxilium ad socios mittemus. 7. Quid dicitis, amici? 8. Saepe ad amicos scribebamus (R. 31). 9. Novas legiones in castra mittebant. 10. Princeps civitatem bene reget.

B. 1. I, O king, shall lead the cavalry into Italy. 2. We were writing a long letter to the king. 3. The earth will cover the bones of the animals. 4. Cæsar sends many hostages to the consul. 5. The boy will read the mother's letter. 6. The allies send help to the Romans. 7. Why were you not reading the letter? 8. What are you reading, friends? 9. If you send (R. 40) the boy to me, I will say a few words to him (R. 3). 10. Why do you not send a cloak to the old man?

Exercise 56.

Perfect Tenses of **rego.**

(1) Write out, without endings, the **perfect stem**[1] of *dīco, dūco, tĕgo, lĕgo, scrībo, mitto, ĕmo, vinco, claudo, dēfendo, descendo, contendo.*

[1] The perfect stem is obtained by taking the ending -i from the 1st person of the perfect tense.

(2) *Viva voce :—*

he has led	we have written	they have bought
we had led	you had written	they have shut
they will have led	I shall have bought	they have defended
I had read	thou hadst conquered	we had read
thou hast read	they have conquered	we had sent
they have read	they will have conquered	we had said

A. 1. Galli magnam copiam frumenti emerant. 2. Nostri in Italiam contendērunt. 3. Cras multos Gallos vicerit. 4. Si auxilium ad socios miseritis, hostes vincent. 5. Urbem nostram defendemus; portas jam clausimus. 6. Copias Romanorum Hannibal vicit. 7. Cæsar magnis itineribus in Italiam contendebat. 8. Cur in planitiem descenderatis, O milites? 9. Dux noster hostes vicerat quod socii auxilium miserant. 10. Hannibal copias suas per (*through, over*) Alpes duxit.

B. 1. The Romans have bought a great number of carts. 2. If you conquer (R. 40) all will praise you. 3. The allies had sent many hostages into camp. 4. The little boy had written a letter to [his] mother. 5. The forces of Hannibal were hastening into Italy. 6. They had covered the bones with earth. 7. The farmers fear the evils of war because the army has descended into the plain. 8. The Gauls were holding themselves in the camp because Cæsar's forces had hastened into Gaul. 9. The inhabitants have sent a great quantity of wine to the soldiers. 10. Why have you shut the gates of the city, O foolish citizens?

Exercise 57.

On the Subjunctive and Imperative of **rego.**

Rule 43.—Four verbs drop the **-ĕ** of the imperative singular, viz.: **dīco**, *to say;* **dūco**, *to lead;* **făcio**,[1] *to make;* **fĕro**,[2] *to carry.* The imperative singular is therefore **dic, duc, fac, fer.**

[1] Some verbs of the third conjugation have *-io* in the 1st person. These will be explained later.

[2] A very irregular verb, to be explained later.

Viva voce :—

let us buy	shut	that he might conquer
let us read	hasten	that we may defend
let us shut	buy	that they may buy
let him shut	do not say	that they might read
let him conquer	do not write	that thou mayst write
let him defend	do not send	that you may conquer

A. 1. Ducamus copias nostras in Galliam citeriorem. 2. Dic mihi nomina comitum tuorum. 3. Cæsar copias in Italiam duxit; ibi castra posuit. 4. Ponamus praesidia ut urbem defendamus. 5. Dux milites in urbem miserat ut frumentum emerent. 6. Instruite aciem, milites, ne hostes nos vincant. 7. Ne scripseris epistolam longam ad matrem. 8. Cæsar cum Gallis bellum gerebat. 9. Consul copias convocat ut auxilium ad socios mittat. 10. Ponite praesidia ad (*at*) portas urbis.

B. 1. Let us buy a large quantity of corn. 2. The soldiers were filling the ditch with water that they might defend the city. 3. He sends the army into Gaul that it may wage war. 4. Read good books, boys. 5. We shall hasten into Africa that we may buy corn. 6. O great consul, lead the army into Italy. 7. For many years (R. 14 (*b*)) the Romans were waging war in Gaul. 8. Cover the boy with a new garment. 9. Send foot-soldiers that they may defend the city. 10. Cæsar often waged war; he conquered many nations.

Exercise 58.

On the Indicative of **audio.**

Viva voce :—

he is punishing	he has fortified	he will end
they will punish	we shall fortify	he has ended
we had punished	they will fortify	you were ending
thou wast punishing	they had fortified	I had ended
I shall have punished	they will have fortified	they end
they punish	thou wast fortifying	we have ended

A. 1. Vallo fossaque hostes castra muniverunt. 2. Pueri senis verba audiebant. 3. Leges scelera improborum virorum punient. 4. Patres filios magna cura erudiverant. 5. Urbem alto muro muniebamus. 6. Mors omnes labores finiet. 7. Si pedites obsides male custodiverint, dux culpabit. 8. Decimo anno consul bellum finivit. 9. Iam castra muniveramus; iam praesidia posueramus. 10. Frumentum custodiunt quod impetum hostium timent.

B. 1. The boys were hastening into the wood because they had heard the sweet voice of the bird. 2. The Gauls had fortified the town with a rampart. 3. Why are you not guarding the hostages? 4. We shall train our children with great care. 5. The master was punishing the pupils because they wrote badly. 6. If you punish the boy he will write better (*mĕlius*). 7. Who will hear the speech of Claudius? 8. They were finishing [their] labours. 9. They were punishing the slaves because they had guarded the hostages badly. 10. If you fortify the camp the enemy will not draw up the line of battle.

Exercise 59.

On the Subjunctive and Imperative of **audio.**

Viva voce:—

he is coming	I may come	they have bound
they were coming	he might come	we are binding
I shall come	we may come	they will bind
he has come	come (plural)	let us bind
we had come	do not come	let us not bind
they will have come	he might have come	we had bound

A. 1. Veni ad me statim. 2. Decimo die nostrae copiae in fines Gallorum pervenerant. 3. Post pugnam occīsos (R. 15) dux sepelivit. 4. Milites conveniebant ut bellum finirent. 5. Venite in templum, comites. 6. Ne corpora in urbe sepeliveritis. 7. Catenas parabit ut captivos vinciat. 8. Laboremus ut nostra

corpora nutriamus. 9. Patres liberos bene nutriunto? 10. Legati ad Cæsarem ante noctem vēnērunt.

B. 1. Do not come to us by night (R. 14). 2. To-morrow we shall arrive in[1] Italy. 3. After the fight our [men] bound the captives with chains. 4. They had bound the hostages in the sight of all. 5. The allies were burying the slain in the wood. 6. If he comes to Cæsar, let him come immediately. 7. I was working that I might nourish my body. 8. We are guarding the hostages well that the leader may not punish us. 9. Before the fight the leader said many [things] to our men. 10. Train your mind; nourish your body.

THE INFINITIVE.

64.—The Latin infinitive is used (*a*) as **subject** or (*b*) as **object** of a verb.

(*a*) **To praise** is pleasanter than **to blame** — **Laudare** quam **culpare** jucundius est

(*b*) The soldier prepares **to fight** — Miles **pugnare** parat

If the infinitive is a transitive verb it can have an object.

He prepares **to plough** the field — Agrum **arare** parat

Exercise 60.

On the Infinitives of the four Conjugations.

Rule 44.—*To walk is pleasant* means *To walk is a pleasant (thing)*. An adjective thus used with an infinitive is always **neuter.**

Viva voce. Say with English the infinitive, present and perfect, of the following verbs:—

regno	vasto	doceo	rego	vinco	audio
intro	praebeo	moveo	mitto	custodio	sepelio

[1] This means motion towards (R. 7, footnote).

A. 1. Pugnare pro (= *for*) patriā est pulchrum. 2. Rex exercitum ducĕre in Italiam statuit. 3. Post pugnam dux corpora sepelire parabat. 4. Militibus est turpe captivos male custodivisse. 5. Erat difficillimum Gallos superare. 6. Galli multos carros ĕmĕre statuerant. 7. Socii statuunt auxilium ad Romanos mittĕre. 8. Exemplum bonum praebēre est difficile. 9. Ambulare in silvis iucundissimum est. 10. Voces puellarum audire est dulce.

B. 1. It is not easy to rule well. 2. To walk in summer delights boys. 3. To plough the land is useful. 4. It is difficult to write well. 5. The leader decides to send hostages. 6. The soldier prepares to set free the captives. 7. It is disgraceful not to have obeyed [one's] parents. 8. Soldiers like (= love) to fight vigorously. 9. To have gold is very pleasant. 10. To have said wise words is always useful.

65. The infinitive continued.

Rule 45.—After verbs of **asking, commanding, advising** and **striving** the English infinitive is translated by **ut** or **ne** and the **subjunctive.**

I ask the boy **to read**	Puerum rŏgo **ut legat**
He asked the boy **not to hasten**	Puerum rŏgavit **ne festinaret**

The reason for this is that in such cases the English infinitive expresses **purpose.** I ask you **to come** means I ask you **so that you may come.** The Latin infinitive never expresses purpose.

The following rhyme is useful :—

With **ask, command, advise** and **strive**
By **ut** translate infinitive.

65 (*a*). The tense (see § 59 and R. 35-36), number and person of the subjunctive used can always be ascertained by turning the phrase in English before translating. Thus :—

I ask **him to come** = I ask him **that he may come**
He asked **me to come** = He asked me **that I might come**
He asked **us to come** = He asked us **that we might come**

66. The commonest verbs which take **ut** and subjunctive are :—

cūrāre	*to take care*	**impĕrāre**	*to give orders*
rŏgāre	*to ask*	**mŏnēre**	*to advise*
ōrare	*to beg*	**persuādēre**	*to persuade*[1]

With *impero* and *persuadeo* the person is put in the **dative.** The other verbs of this list govern an accusative.

Exercise 61.

Viva voce. Turn as in § 65 (*b*), and translate :—

he asks me to hasten	I beg the boy not to weep
he asked me to hasten	I begged the boy not to weep
he asks them to hasten	they beg us not to weep
he asked them to hasten	they begged us not to weep
he asks us to hasten	they beg you not to weep
he asked us to hasten	they begged you not to weep

A. 1. Rex militem monet ut captivos bene custodiat.[2] 2. Miles medicum orabat ut vulnus sanaret. 3. Nos monebit ne nocte urbem intremus. 4. Sociis dux imperavit ut auxilium mitterent. 5. Me orat ut seni pecuniam dem. 6. Curate, milites, ut castra muniatis. 7. Pueri curabant ut vitia vitarent. 8. Nobis persuadet ne aciem instruamus. 9. Quis me monet ne urbem defendam? 10. Ora puerum ne matri displiceat.

B. 1. He gives orders to the allies to hold the island. 2. The children beg the doctor to heal [their] mother. 3. My mother was asking me not to write badly. 4. The citizens are begging the general not to destroy the town. 5. They advise us to fight vigorously. 6. I beg you not to blame me. 7. Advise the soldiers to obey the leader. 8. He orders the

---

[1] In the sense of persuading a person to do a thing.

[2] This and similar sentences should first be translated literally and then be turned into a phrase with an infinitive, as in 65 (*b*).

soldiers to bury the dead. 9. We advise you to read good books. 10. Let us beg the father to train the boy with very great care.

PRESENT AND FUTURE PARTICIPLES.

67. The English present participle ends in **-ing**; *working, walking.* It is frequently used with the verb *to be* to form the continuous tenses, R. 29, *e.g.*, *he is ploughing.* This is **never so in Latin**, and the student must be careful to translate *he is ploughing* by *he ploughs*, ărăt.

Rule 46.—The **Latin present participle** is obtained from the 1st person of the present indicative by the changes shown in the following table :—

1st	ăm-o	**ăm-ans**, -antis	*loving*
2nd	mŏn-eo	**mŏn-ens**, -entis	*advising*
3rd	rĕg-o	**rĕg-ens**, -entis	*ruling*
4th	aud-io	**audĭ-ens**, -entis	*hearing*

Rule 47.—The **Latin present participle** is an **adjective** declined[1] like *prudens*, § 33, *i.e.*, ablative **-i**, genitive plural **-ium**, neuter plural **-ia.** It must agree with the word referred to in number, gender and case.

Who did not hear the shouts of the **Gauls fighting** bravely?	Quis clamores **Gallorum**, fortissĭme **pugnantium**, non audivit?

Rule 48.—The Latin **future participle** is obtained from the supine, § 54, by changing the **-m** into **-rus.** It is an adjective of three terminations, declined like *bonus.* It agrees in *number*, *gender* and *case* with the word referred to.

1st	ămo	amatu-m	**ămātū-rus**	*about to love*
2nd	mŏneo	mŏnĭtu-m	**mŏnĭtū-rus**	*about to advise*
3rd	rĕgo	rectu-m	**rectū-rus**	*about to rule*
4th	audio	audītu-m	**audītū-rus**	*about to hear*

[1]With one exception. When the present participle is used in the ablative absolute (to be explained later) the ablative ends in **-e.**

To the slave **about to fight** the leader gives a sword	Servo **pugnaturo** dux gladium dat
They **are about to carry** the gold into the temple	Aurum in templum **portaturi sunt**

Rule 49.—Unlike the present participle, the **future participle** is often used with the verb *to be* to form a tense referring to the immediate future.

The **girl** is **about to give** a flower to her sister.	**Puella** sorori florem **dătura** est

EXERCISE **62.**

(1) Say with English the *nominative singular* and *plural* and the *genitive singular* and *plural* of the present participle of :—

ambulo	praebeo	dico	custodio
vasto	deleo	tego	munio
vulnero	fleo	mitto	sepelio
intro	doceo	lego	vincio

(2) Say the supine and then the future participle of the following verbs :—

monstro	praebeo	duco	finio
culpo	deleo	scribo	venio
aro	moveo	mitto	sepelio
do	doceo	gero	nutrio

(3) Say what words the italicised participles agree with, state the number, gender and case and then translate the *participles*.

1. The boy, *hearing* the noise, runs into the wood. 2. The boys, *hearing* the noise, run into the wood. 3. To the boys, *hearing* the noise, their companion shows the way. 4. He praises the woman *showing* the way. 5. He praises the women *showing* the way. 6. The soldiers, *about-to-enter* the city, prepare arms. 7. The girl, *about-to-walk* in the garden, has a cloak. 8. Who does not see the girl *about-to-walk* in the garden? 9. Who does not see the girls *about-to-walk* in the garden? 10. They are terrified by the soldiers *about-to-ravage* the **land.**

Exercise 63.

Rule 50.—Present and **future participles** are often used to translate an English clause or sentence.

The consul hears the soldiers [who are] **announcing** the victory Milites, victoriam **nuntiantes**, consul audit.

*** *Before translating, pick out the participles and find, by the ending, what words they agree with.*

A. 1. Nemo pugnantium (R. 15) ducem culpat. 2. Scipio, Carthaginem deleturus, in Africam festinabat. 3. Militi, victoriam nuntianti, laudem magnam rex dedit. 4. Puellae rosas paraturae sunt. 5. Gallos, strenue pugnantes, Romani vicerunt. 6. Videt hostes, patriam vastantes. 7. Clamores militum, captivos vincientium, in aures nostras veniunt. 8. Regi, auxilium Romanis præbituro, agricolae frumentum dant. 9. Magnus est dolor militum, comites sepelientium. 10. Sociis, bellum gesturis, rex auxilium praebet.

*** *Before translating pick out each participle and say what word it agrees with* (R. 47-48).

Imitate the order of words in Rule 47.

B. 1. The Greeks left a wooden horse standing on (= *in*) the shore. 2. Soldiers always praise a leader fighting bravely. 3. The allies, about-to-send help, prepare corn. 4. The leader, [while] drawing up the line of battle, relates the deeds of brave [men]. 5. The Gauls are about to ravage our lands. 6. To the consul, about to wage war, the Romans give great forces. 7. We have heard the names of the soldiers [who are] conquering the Gauls. 8. To the girl obeying her mother (R. 41) we give a reward. 9. The leader was about-to-bind the captives. 10. Take-care-of (*curate*[1]) the children of [those] defending the city.

[1] **Curare**, *to take care of, to mind*, governs the accusative.

The verb **sum**, *I am.*

sum, essĕ, fŭ-ī, fŭtūrŭs, *to be.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
sum, *I am*	**fŭ-ī**, *I have been* or *I was*
ĕs, *thou art*	**fŭ-istī**, *thou hast been* or *wast*
est, *he is*	**fŭ-ĭt**, *he has been* or *was*
sŭmŭs, *we are*	**fŭ-ĭmŭs**, *we have been* or *were*
estĭs, *you are*	**fŭ-istĭs**, *you have been* or *were*
sunt, *they are*	**fŭ-ērunt** or **fŭērĕ** } *they have been* or *were*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
ĕram, *I was*	**fu-ĕram**, *I had been*
ĕrās, *thou wast*	**fu-ĕrās**, *thou hadst been*
ĕrăt, *he was*	**fu-ĕrăt**, *he had been*
ĕrāmŭs, *we were*	**fu-ĕrāmŭs**, *we had been*
ĕrātĭs, *you were*	**fu-ĕrātĭs**, *you had been*
ĕrant, *they were*	**fu-ĕrant**, *they had been*

FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
ĕrō, *I shall be*	**fu-ĕro**, *I shall have been*
ĕrĭs, *thou wilt be*	**fu-ĕrĭs**, *thou wilt have been*
ĕrĭt, *he will be*	**fu-ĕrĭt**, *he will have been*
ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall be*	**fu-ĕrĭmŭs**, *we shall have been*
ĕrĭtĭs, *you will be*	**fu-ĕrĭtĭs**, *you will have been*
ĕrunt, *they will be*	**fu-ĕrint**, *they will have been*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
sim, *I may be*	**fŭ-ĕrim**, *I may have been*
sīs, *thou mayst be*	**fŭ-ĕrīs**, *thou mayst have been*
sĭt, *he may be*	**fŭ-ĕrĭt**, *he may have been*
sīmŭs, *we may be*	**fŭ-ĕrīmŭs**, *we may have been*
sītĭs, *you may be*	**fŭ-ĕrītĭs**, *you may have been*
sint, *they may be*	**fŭ-ĕrint**, *they may have been*

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
essem or **fŏrem**, *I might* be*	**fu-issem**, *I should have been*
essēs or **fŏrēs**, *thou mightest be*	**fu-issēs**, *thou wouldst have been*
essĕt or **fŏrĕt**, *he might be*	**fu-issĕt**, *he would have been*
essēmŭs or **fŏrēmŭs**, *we might be*	**fu-issēmŭs**, *we should have been*
essētĭs or **fŏrētĭs**, *you might be*	**fu-issētĭs**, *you would have been*
essent or **fŏrent**, *they might be*	**fu-issent**, *they would have been*

* Or *should*.

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.	FUTURE OR LEGAL.
ĕs, *be thou*	**estō**, *thou shalt* or *must be*
	estō, *he shall* or *must be*
estĕ, *be ye*	**estōtĕ**, *ye shall* or *must be*
	suntō, *they shall* or *must be*

Infinitive Mood and Participles.

Infinitive Present. **essĕ**, *to be*
,, Perfect. **fŭ-issĕ**, *to have been*
,, Future. **fŭtūrŭs essĕ** or **fŏrĕ**, *to be about to be*
Participle Future. **fŭtūrŭs, -a, -um**, *about to be*

Exercise 64.

On the Indicative of **sum.**

Rule 51.—The verb **to be** takes the same case after it as before it when the same thing is meant (see § 20 (*c*), p. 15).

The men are sailors **Viri** sunt **nautae**

A. 1. *Senum cantus:* Nos fuimus olim iuvenes, fortes et audaces. 2. *Cantus iuvenum:* Nos sumus hodie iuvenes et fortes, nos pro (*for*) patriā pugnabimus. 3. *Cantus puerorum:* Teneri sumus; mox fortes erimus et pugnabimus sicut (*like*) patres nostri. 4. Fuerat dux equitum. 5. Eo tempore in Italia eramus. 6. Tua consilia rei publicae utilia erunt. 7. Si fortes eritis, victores eritis. 8. Semper felices, amici, fuistis. 9. Incolae insulae fuerant nautae. 10. Nostra erit victoria si fuerimus fortes.

B. 1. The father was a sailor. 2. In that year the consuls were Claudius and his brother. 3. We shall be happy if you are happy. 4. The boy has always been bold. 5. We had been in Italy many years (R. 14 (*b*)). 6. If the boys are happy the mothers will be glad. 7. Soon we shall be in Italy. 8. You, [when] boys, had been strong and bold. 9. Never had my soldiers been timid. 10. We were the guardians of the gold.

Rule 52.[1]—When the subject consists of two nouns, or two pronouns, or a noun and a pronoun joined by *and*, the **verb is plural.**

The dog and the horse are useful to men — Canis et equus hominibus **sunt** utiles

Rule 53.[1]—When two subjects joined by **et** are not of the same

[1] These two rules are just the same in English. We say He and I are (*i.e.*, we are) in the garden.

person, the verb is plural and agrees in person with the 1st person rather than with the 2nd and with the 2nd person rather than with the 3rd.

You and I (*we*) **are** glad Ego et tu laeti **sumus**

Rule 54. Order of Words.—In Latin the 1st person stands before the 2nd or 3rd; the 2nd stands before the 3rd, *i.e.*, pronouns and nouns stand in the order of their person.[1]

You and I **Ego** et **tu**
My king and I **Ego** et **rex meus**

Exercise 65.

On the Subjunctive and Imperative of **sum.**

A. 1. Tu et frater tuus estis in horto; ego et soror mea sumus in templo. 2. O pueri, este semper fideles. 3. Es fortis ut victor sis. 4. Vir et eius filius fuerant utilissimi civitati. 5. Ne fueris (R. 37 (*c*)) iracundus, O dux. 6. Consulis consilia erant sapientia ut utilia civitati essent. 7. Ego contentus sum ut laetus sim. 8. Pugnate strenue ne bellum longum sit. 9. Leges sunto iustae. 10. Este testes meae constantiae.

B. 1. Let (R. 37 (*d*)) the weapons be sharp. 2. My father and I were always faithful to our friends. 3. Be diligent that your parents may be glad. 4. You and I shall be unhappy if our friends are in danger. 5. Be contented with few things (*res*) that you may be happy. 6. Do not be foolish, boys. 7. The old man had always been faithful that his memory might be pleasant to the citizens. 8. Citizens must be faithful. 9. Do not be unhappy, friends; be glad. 10. My friend and I had been in Italy.

[1] English, out of politeness, makes the speaker put himself last.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE

ămŏr, ămārī, ămātŭs sum, *I am loved.*

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT.

am-ŏr, *I am loved*
am-ārĭs or **amārĕ,** *thou art loved*
am-ātŭr, *he is loved*
am-āmŭr, *we are loved*
am-āmĭnī, *you are loved*
am-antŭr, *they are loved*

IMPERFECT.

am-ābăr, *I was being loved*
am-ābārĭs or **amābārĕ,** *thou wast being loved*
am-ābātŭr, *he was being loved*
am-ābāmŭr, *we were being loved*
am-ābāmĭnī, *you were being loved*
am-ābantŭr, *they were being loved*

FUTURE.

am-ābŏr, *I shall be loved*
am-ābĕrĭs or **amābĕrĕ,** *thou wilt be loved*
am-ābĭtŭr, *he will be loved*
am-ābĭmŭr, *we shall be loved*
am-ābĭmĭnī, *you will be loved*
am-ābuntŭr, *they will be loved*

PERFECT

amātus sum, *I have been loved* or *I was loved*
amātus ĕs, *thou hast been loved* or *wast loved*
amātus est, *he has been loved* or *was loved*
amātī sŭmŭs, *we have been loved* or *we were loved*
amātī estĭs, *you have been loved* or *you were loved*
amātī sunt, *they have been loved* or *were loved*

PLUPERFECT.

amātŭs ĕram, *I had been loved*
amātŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst been loved*
amātŭs ĕrăt, *he had been loved*
amātī ĕrāmŭs, *we had been loved*
amātī ĕrātĭs, *you had been loved*
amātī ĕrant, *they had been loved*

FUTURE PERFECT.

amātŭs ĕrō, *I shall have been loved*
amātŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been loved*
amātŭs ĕrĭt, *he will have been loved*
amātī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been loved*
amātī ĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been loved*
amātī ĕrunt, *they will have been loved*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.

am-ĕr, *I may be loved*
am-ērĭs or **amērĕ**, *thou mayst be loved*
am-ētŭr, *he may be loved*
am-ēmur, *we may be loved*
am-ēmĭnī, *you may be loved*
am-entŭr, *they may be loved*

IMPERFECT

am-ārĕr, *I might be loved*
am-ārērĭs or **amārērĕ**, *thou mightest be loved*
am-ārētŭr, *he might be loved*
am-ārēmur, *we might be loved*
am-ārēmĭnī, *you might be loved*
am-ārentŭr, *they might be loved*

PERFECT.

amatŭs sim, *I may have been loved*
amātŭs sīs, *thou mayst have been loved*
amātŭs sĭt, *he may have been loved*
amātī sīmŭs, *we may have been loved*
amātī sītĭs, *you may have been loved*
amātī sint, *they may have been loved*

PLUPERFECT.

amātŭs essĕm, *I should have been loved*
amātŭs essēs, *thou wouldst have been loved*
amātŭs essĕt, *he would have been loved*
amātī essēmŭs, *we should have been loved*
amātī essētĭs, *you would have been loved*
amātī essent, *they would have been loved*

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.

am-ārĕ, *be thou loved*
am-āmĭnī, *be ye loved*

FUTURE OR LEGAL

am-ātŏr, *thou must be loved*
am-ātŏr, *he must be loved*
am-antŏr, *they must be loved*

Infinitive.

Pres. **am-ārī**, *to be loved*
Perf. **amātŭs esse** or **fuisse**, *to have been loved*
Fut. **amātum īrī**, *to be about to be loved*

Participles.

Perfect. **amātŭs**, **-a**, **-um**, *loved* or *having been loved*
Gerundive. **amandŭs**, **-a**, **-um**, *requiring to be loved*

SECOND CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

mŏnĕor, mŏnērī, mŏnĭtus sum, *to be advised.*

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT.

mŏn-eor, *I am advised*
mŏn-ērĭs, *thou art advised*
mŏn-ētŭr, *he is advised*
mŏn-ēmŭr, *we are advised*
mŏn-ēmĭnī, *you are advised*
mŏn-entŭr, *they are advised*

IMPERFECT.

mŏn-ēbăr, *I was being advised*
mŏn-ēbārĭs or **mŏnēbārĕ,** *thou wast being advised*
mŏn-ēbātŭr, *he was being advised*
mŏn-ēbāmŭr, *we were being advised*
mŏn-ēbāmĭnī, *you were being advised*
mŏn-ēbantŭr, *they were being advised*

FUTURE.

mŏn-ēbŏr, *I shall be advised*
mŏn-ēbĕrĭs or **mŏnēbĕrĕ,** *thou wilt be advised*
mŏn-ēbĭtŭr, *he will be advised*
mŏn-ēbĭmŭr, *we shall be advised*
mŏn-ēbĭmĭnī, *you will be advised*
mŏn-ēbuntŭr, *they will be advised*

PERFECT.

mŏnĭtŭs sum, *I have been advised* or *was advised*
mŏnĭtŭs ĕs, *thou hast been advised* or *wast advised*
mŏnĭtŭs est, *he has been advised* or *was advised*
mŏnĭtī sŭmŭs, *we have been advised* or *were advised*
mŏnĭtī estĭs, *you have been advised* or *were advised*
mŏnĭtī sunt, *they have been advised* or *were advised*

PLUPERFECT.

mŏnĭtŭs ĕram, *I had been advised*
mŏnĭtŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst been advised*
mŏnĭtŭs ĕrăt, *he had been advised*
mŏnĭtī ĕrāmŭs, *we had been advised*
mŏnĭtī ĕrātĭs, *you had been advised*
mŏnĭtī ĕrant, *they had been advised*

FUTURE PERFECT.

mŏnĭtŭs ĕro, *I shall have been advised*
mŏnĭtŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been advised*
mŏnĭtŭs ĕrĭt, *he will have been advised*
mŏnĭtī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been advised*
mŏnĭtī ĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been advised*
mŏnĭtī ĕrunt, *they will have been advised*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.

mon-eăr, *I may be advised*
mon-eārĭs or **mŏneārĕ,** *thou mayst be advised*
mon-eātŭr, *he may be advised.*
mon-eāmŭr, *we may be advised*
mon-eāmĭnī, *you may be advised*
mon-eantŭr, *they may be advised*

IMPERFECT.

mŏnērĕr, *I might* (or *should*) *be advised*
mŏnērērĭs or **mŏnērērĕ,** *thou mightest be advised*
mŏnērētŭr, *he might be advised*
mŏnērēmŭr, *we might be advised*
mŏnērēmĭnī, *you might be advised*
mŏnērentŭr, *they might be advised*

PERFECT.

mŏnĭtus sim, *I may have been advised*
mŏnĭtus sīs, *thou mayst have been advised*
mŏnĭtus sĭt, *he may have been advised*
mŏnĭtī sīmŭs, *we may have been advised*
mŏnĭtī sītĭs, *you may have been advised*
mŏnĭtī sint, *they may have been advised*

PLUPERFECT.

mŏnĭtus essem, *I might have been advised*
mŏnĭtus essēs, *thou mightest have been advised*
mŏnĭtus essĕt, *he might have been advised*
mŏnĭtī essēmŭs, *we might have been advised*
mŏnĭtī essētĭs, *you might have been advised*
mŏnĭtī essent, *they might have been advised*

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.

mŏnērĕ, *be thou advised*
mŏnēmĭnī, *be you advised*

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

mŏnētŏr, *thou must be advised*
mŏnētŏr, *he must be advised*
mŏnentŏr, *they must be advised*

Infinitive.

Pres. **mŏnērī,** *to be advised*
Perf. **mŏnĭtŭs essĕ** or **fuĭssĕ,** *to have been advised*
Fut. **mŏnĭtum īrī,** *to be about to be advised*

Participles.

Perfect. **mŏnĭtŭs, -a, -um,** *advised* or *having been advised*
Gerundive. **mŏnendus, -a, -um,** *requiring to be advised*

THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

rĕgŏr, rĕgī, rectŭs sum, *to be ruled.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
rĕg-ŏr, *I am ruled*	**rectus sum,** *I have been ruled* or *was ruled*
rĕg-ĕrĭs, *thou art ruled*	**rectus ĕs,** *thou hast been ruled* or *wast ruled*
rĕg-ĭtŭr, *he is ruled*	**rectus est,** *he has been ruled* or *was ruled*
rĕg-ĭmŭr, *we are ruled*	**rectī sŭmŭs,** *we have been ruled* or *were ruled*
rĕg-ĭmĭnī, *you are ruled*	**rectī estĭs,** *you have been ruled* or *were ruled*
rĕg-untŭr, *they are ruled*	**rectī sunt,** *they have been ruled* or *were ruled*
IMPERFECT	PLUPERFECT.
rĕg-ēbăr, *I was being ruled*	**rectŭs ĕrăm,** *I had been ruled*
rĕg-ēbārĭs or **rĕgēbārĕ,** *thou wast being ruled*	**rectŭs ĕrās,** *thou hadst been ruled*
rĕg-ēbātŭr, *he was being ruled*	**rectŭs ĕrăt,** *he had been ruled*
rĕg-ēbāmŭr, *we were being ruled*	**rectī ĕrāmŭs,** *we had been ruled*
rĕg-ēbāmĭnī, *you were being ruled*	**rectī ĕrātĭs,** *you had been ruled*
rĕg-ēbantŭr, *they were being ruled*	**rectī ĕrant,** *they had been ruled*
FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
rĕg-ăr, *I shall be ruled*	**rectŭs ĕro,** *I shall have been ruled*
rĕg-ērĭs or **rĕgēre,** *thou wilt be ruled*	**rectŭs ĕrĭs,** *thou wilt have been ruled*
rĕg-ētŭr, *he will be ruled*	**rectŭs ĕrĭt** *he will have been ruled*
rĕg-ēmŭr, *we shall be ruled*	**rectī ĕrĭmŭs,** *we shall have been ruled*
rĕg-ēmĭnī, *you will be ruled*	**rectī ĕrĭtĭs,** *you will have been ruled*
rĕg-entŭr, *they will be ruled*	**rectī ĕrunt,** *they will have been ruled*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.

rĕg-ăr, *I may be ruled*
rĕg-ārĭs or **rĕgārĕ,** *thou mayst be ruled*
rĕg-ātŭr, *he may be ruled*
rĕg-āmŭr, *we may be ruled*
rĕg-āmĭnī, *you may be ruled*
rĕg-antŭr, *they may be ruled*

IMPERFECT.

rĕgĕrĕr, *I might be ruled*
rĕgĕrērĭs or **rĕgĕrērĕ,** *thou mightest be ruled*
rĕgĕrētŭr, *he might be ruled*
rĕgĕrēmŭr, *we might be ruled*
rĕgĕrēmĭnī, *you might be ruled*
rĕgĕrentŭr, *they might be ruled*

PERFECT.

rectŭs sĭm, *I may have been ruled*
rectŭs sīs, *thou mayst have been ruled*
rectŭs sĭt, *he may have been ruled*
rectī sīmŭs, *we may have been ruled*
rectī sītĭs, *you may have been ruled*
rectī sint, *they may have been ruled*

PLUPERFECT.

rectŭs essĕm, *I should* (or *might*) *have been ruled*
rectŭs essēs, *thou wouldst have been ruled*
rectŭs essĕt, *he would have been ruled*
rectī essēmŭs, *we should have been ruled*
rectī essētĭs, *you would have been ruled*
rectī essent, *they would have been ruled*

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.

rĕg-ĕrĕ, *be thou ruled*
rĕg-ĭmĭnĭ, *be ye ruled*

FUTURE.

rĕg-ĭtŏr, *thou must be ruled*
rĕg-ĭtŏr, *he must be ruled*
rĕg-untŏr, *they must be ruled*

Infinitive.

Pres. **rĕg-ī,** *to be ruled*
Perf. **rectŭs esse** or **fuisse,** *to have been ruled*
Fut. **rectum īrī,** *to be about to be ruled*

Participles.

Perfect. **rectus, -a, -um,** *ruled* or *having been ruled*
Gerundive. **rĕgendŭs, -a, -um,** *requiring to be ruled*

FOURTH CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

audĭŏr, audīrī, audītus sum, *to be heard.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

aud-iŏr, *I am heard*
aud-īris, *thou art heard*
aud-ītur, *he is heard*
aud-īmur, *we are heard*
aud-īmĭnī, *you are heard*
aud-ĭuntŭr, *they are heard*

IMPERFECT.

aud-iēbăr, *I was being heard*
aud-iēbārĭs or **audiēbārĕ**, *thou wast being heard*
aud-iēbātŭr, *he was being heard*
aud-iēbāmŭr, *we were being heard*
aud-iēbāmĭnī, *you were being heard*
aud-iēbantŭr, *they were being heard*

FUTURE.

aud-iăr, *I shall be heard*
aud-iērĭs or **audiērĕ**, *thou wilt be heard*
aud-iētur, *he will be heard*
aud-iēmur, *we shall be heard*
aud-iēminī, *you will be heard*
aud-ientur, *they will be heard*

PERFECT.

audītŭs sum, *I have been heard* or *was heard*
audītŭs ĕs, *thou hast been heard* or *wast heard*
audītŭs est, *he has been heard* or *was heard*
audītī sŭmŭs, *we have been heard* or *were heard*
audītī estĭs, *you have been heard* or *were heard*
audītī sunt, *they have been heard* or *were heard*

PLUPERFECT.

audītŭs ĕrăm, *I had been heard*
audītŭs ĕrās, *thou hadst been heard*
audītŭs ĕrăt, *he had been heard*
audītī ĕrāmŭs, *we had been heard*
audītī ĕrātĭs, *you had been heard*
audītī ĕrant, *they had been heard*

FUTURE PERFECT.

audītŭs ĕro, *I shall have been heard*
audītŭs ĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been heard*
audītŭs ĕrĭt, *he will have been heard*
audītī ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been heard*
audītī ĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been heard*
audītī ĕrunt, *they will have been heard*

Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT.

aud-iăr, *I may be heard*
aud-iārĭs or **audiārĕ**, *thou mayst be heard*
aud-iātŭr, *he may be heard*
aud-iāmŭr, *we may be heard*
aud-iāmĭnī, *you may be heard*
aud-iantŭr, *they may be heard*

IMPERFECT.

audīrĕr, *I might be heard*
audīrērĭs or **audīrērĕ**, *thou mightest be heard*
audīrētŭr, *he might be heard*
audīrēmŭr, *we might be heard*
audīrēmĭnī, *you might be heard*
audīrentŭr, *they might be heard*

PERFECT.

audītŭs sim, *I may have been heard*
audītŭs sīs, *thou mayst have been heard*
audītŭs sĭt, *he may have been heard*
audītī sīmŭs, *we may have been heard*
audītī sītĭs, *you may have been heard*
audītī sint, *they may have been heard*

PLUPERFECT.

audītŭs essem, *I should* (or *might*) *have been heard*
audītŭs essēs, *thou wouldst have been heard*
audītŭs essĕt, *he would have been heard*
audītī essēmŭs, *we should have been heard*
audītī essētĭs, *you would have been heard*
audītī essent, *they would have been heard*

Imperative Mood.

PRESENT.

aud-īrĕ, *be thou heard*
aud-īmĭnī, *be ye heard*

FUTURE OR LEGAL.

audītŏr, *thou must be heard*
audītŏr, *he must be heard*
audĭuntŏr, *they must be heard*

Infinitive.

Pres. **audīrī**, *to be heard*
Perf. **audītŭs**, **-a**, **-um**, **essĕ** or **fuissĕ**, *to have been heard*
Fut. **audītum īrī**, *to be about to be heard*

Participles.

Perfect. **audītus**, **-a**, **-um**, *heard* or *having been heard*
Gerundive. **audiendŭs**, **-a**, **-um**, *requiring to be heard*

68. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICE.[1]

(*a*) **Active.** The farmer **ploughs** the land.

(*b*) **Passive.** The land **is ploughed** by the farmer.

When the verb shows that the subject of the sentence denotes the **doer** of the **action** the verb is said to be in the **active** voice.

When the verb shows that the subject of the sentence denotes the receiver or sufferer of the action the verb is said to be in the **passive**[2] voice.

Rule 55.—The Latin present tense of the passive means that the action is still going on, not completed. Thus—

Puer **laudatur** = *the boy* **is being praised.**

Similarly the imperfect *laudabatur* means that the action was going on, not completed, at a given past time, *i.e.*, he *was being praised.*

69. In translating into Latin care must be taken to ascertain the exact meaning. *The letter* **is written** means *the letter* **has been written,** and it must be translated by the Latin perfect (R. 57 note).

EXERCISE 66.

On the Present, Imperfect and Future of **amor.**

Viva voce :—

we are being praised	they are being shown
they will be praised	you will be carried
he was being blamed	they are being ploughed
you are being blamed	they will be ploughed
it is being given	we were being overcome
it will be given	thou art being overcome
thou wilt be adorned	you will be delighted
thou art being adorned	you are being delighted

A. 1. Consilia parantur; milites convocantur. 2. Vos, O filiae, a matribus ornabimini. 3. Dum regis agri arantur, agricolae terra vastabatur. 4. Si bellum erit cives ad arma vocabuntur. 5. Tu, fili, cottidie a magistris culparis. 6. Mul-

[1] Some grammarians only apply the term active to transitive verbs. They then speak of intransitive verbs as being neuter.

[2] Passive means suffering, from the Latin *passus* = suffered.

tum frumenti (R. 22) civibus dabitur. 7. Viri periculis magnis sapientiā liberantur. 8. Obsides a Gallis Cæsari dabuntur. 9. Nos floribus delectabamur, vos ab equis delectabamini. 10. Nos superabimur quod via hostibus monstratur.

B. 1. Soon the victory will be announced to the Romans. 2. The flowers were being carried into the temple. 3. Why are you not being called together, citizens? 4. While you were praised I was blamed. 5. The Gauls will be overcome; their lands will be ravaged. 6. Great forces are being given to the consul. 7. The fields of good husbandmen are ploughed in winter. 8. You, Claudius, were blamed because our plans were being announced to the enemy. 9. Swords are being given to the slaves. 10. You, O Gauls, will be overcome by (R. 13) the Romans, your towns will be given to the victors.

Rule 56.—The Latin **perfect participle** is obtained by changing the **-m** of the supine[1] into **-s.**

PRES. TENSE.	SUPINE.	PERF. PART.	
am-o	**am-ātum**	**am-ātŭs**	*having been loved*
culp-o	**culp-ātum**	**culp-ātŭs**	*having been blamed*

Verbs for practice:—Give the supine and perfect participle (with meaning) of laudo, vulnero, vasto, aro, delecto, orno, monstro, supero, porto, convoco, părо, nuntio.

Rule 57.—The **perfect tenses** of the passive voice are made up of the **perfect participle** and the verb **sum.**[2]

---

[1] § 54, p. 60. The supine of first conjugation verbs is obtained by changing the *-o* of the 1st person into *-ātum:* **am-o, am-ātum; culp-o, culp-ātum.**

[2] The **perfect tenses** of the verb **sum** are sometimes used to form the perfect tenses of the passive voice. Thus:—

perf. indic	**amatus sum**	or **amatus fui,** etc.
plupf. ,,	**amatus eram**	or **amatus fueram,** etc.
fut. pf. ,,	**amatus ero**	or **amatus fuero,** etc.
perf. subjun.	**amatus sim**	or **amatus fuerim,** etc.
plupf. ,,	**amatus essem**	or **amatus fuissem,** etc.

70. The perfect participle is an adjective like *bonus*, and it must always agree in gender, number and case with the word it refers to.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
Puer **amatus** est	Pueri **amati** sunt
Puella **amata** est	Puellae **amatae** sunt
Consilium **laudatum** est	Consilia **laudata** sunt.

NOTE.—*The letter has been written* means that the writing is completed. If we say the letter *is written* it means the letter *has been written;* and just as the active perfect **scripsit** means he *has written* or he *wrote*, so the passive perfect means *has been* or *was written.*

Epistola **scripta est**[1] The letter **has been written** or **was written**

EXERCISE 67.

On the Perfect Tenses of amor.

Viva voce :—

the woman has been praised	I shall have been delighted
the women have been praised	we shall have been set free
the boy had been praised	it had been avoided
the boys had been praised	they (neut.) had been avoided
the word has been praised	we have been called
the words have been praised	he was blamed
the lands will have been ravaged	we were overcome
the girl had been adorned	it was announced

A. 1. Statuae a puellis ornatae erant. 2. Si superati erimus, socii nostri superabuntur. 3. Multa mala regis sapientiā vitata erant. 4. Nostri agri vastati sunt; nostri socii superati (sunt). 5. Iter hostibus a servo monstratum erat. 6. Oppida aedificata sunt; agri arati (sunt). 7. Exercitus superabatur quod eius dux vulneratus erat. 8. Mox aurum in urbem portatum erit. 9. Magnae copiae consuli datae sunt. 10. Tu, O fili, a magistro laudatus es.

B. 1. Corn had been given to the allies by the consul. 2. In winter the land was ploughed, in summer the corn was carried into the city. 3. If the soldiers are called together

[1] Sometimes the perfect participle passive is used, with or without the verb *to be*, purely as an adjective, *e.g.*, *occisus*. Ex. 59, A. 3.

(R. 40) we shall not be overcome. 4. In that battle the consuls had been wounded. 5. The temple was adorned with many flowers. 6. The matter (= *res*) has been announced to the consuls. 7. We have been called together, friends, because the state is in great danger. 8. Why were you blamed, foolish boys? 9. They were carried into the house by the sailors. 10. The dangers had been avoided by wise plans.

Rule 58.—The perfect participle is often used, without the verb *sum*, to describe or distinguish a noun with which it must agree in *number*, *gender* and *case*.

Girls, **adorned** with flowers, were carrying the statue into the temple	Puellae, **floribus ornatae**, statuam in templum portabant

NOTE.—**Order of words.**—In phrases like *adorned with flowers* place the participle at the end of the phrase, and place the whole phrase immediately after the word it qualifies.

Rule 59.—A participle used in this way very often corresponds to a complete clause or sentence in English.

The citizens of the city which-had-been-stormed were in great danger	Cives urbis **expugnatae** in magno periculo erant

Here *which-had-been-stormed* is equivalent to *stormed*.

EXERCISE 68.

A. State what nouns the following participles refer to, giving number, gender and case:—

1. The soldiers, *wounded* by the spears of the enemy, were carried into the camp. 2. To the soldiers *wounded* in that battle Cæsar gave money. 3. The names of the soldiers *wounded* in that battle are known to us. 4. The corn, *prepared* by the farmer, was given to the soldier.

Turn the clauses in italics into participles:—

5. All praise the girls *who-are-adorned* with flowers. 6. They

give rewards to the soldiers *who-have-been-called-together*. 7. The enemy destroyed the city *when-it-had-been-stormed*. 8. To the slaves *who-had-been-set-free* the masters gave horses. 9. The memory of dangers *which-have-been-avoided* is pleasant. 10. He praises the house *which-has-been-built* by the slaves.

B. Translate the above into Latin.

Exercise 69.

On the whole of **amor.**

A. 1. Galli, a Romanis superati, obsides Caesari dant. 2. Date frumentum ne vestri agri vastentur. 3. Lauda alios (*others*) ut ipse (*you, yourself*) laudēris. 4. Dux curabat ut frumentum militibus daretur. 5. Arma parabamus ne superaremur. 6. Frumentum, ab agricola paratum, duci monstratum est. 7. Vos, O feminae, timebatis ne vulneraremini. 8. Festinabam ne culparer. 9. Hastae militum, in ea pugna vulneratorum, liberis datae sunt. 10. Dominus fabros laudavit ut domus bene aedificetur (R. 36).

B. 1. Let us prepare flowers that the temple may be adorned. 2. The leaders, called * together by the king, were hastening into the city. 3. The leader calls together the slaves *who-had-been-set-free*. 4. They prepared gold that it might be given to the consul. 5. The land, ploughed * in winter, will give (= offer) corn in summer. 6. The spear, pointed * out by the soldier, had wounded many [men]. 7. Do not be foolish that you may not be blamed. 8. I took care that the dangers might be avoided. 9. Boys, praised * by masters, will learn many things.

71. *_* A very common error is to mistake a **perfect participle** for a finite[1] verb. A **perfect participle** can always have *having been* prefixed to it. Thus, **called** means **having been called.**

[1] A **finite** verb is a verb with a subject expressed or understood. Thus participles, infinitives, supines, and gerunds, etc., are not finite verbs.

Exercise 70.

Second conjugation passive voice. Vocs. 51-4.

Viva voce. (1) Simple tenses :—

he is feared	we are being taught	they will be taught
we shall be feared	they will be taught	they will be destroyed
they were being feared	thou art taught	they will be terrified
I shall be feared	you are taught	they will be moved
thou art feared	you may be taught	he may be moved
they are feared	I might be taught	he may be restrained

(2) Perfect tenses. Give the perfect participles[1] (R. 56) of :—

placeo*	deleo	noceo*	doceo
displiceo*	moveo	fleo*	teneo
pareo*	compleo	praebeo	coerceo

(3) the boys have been advised — the camp had been moved
the girls have been advised — the camp will have been moved
I had been taught — the city has been destroyed
we had been taught — the town has been destroyed
the ditch has been filled — we shall have been frightened
the ditches have been filled — he may have been frightened

Exercise 71.

A. 1. Nocte pueri saepe terrentur. 2. Cur non meis lacrimis movebaris, O crudelissime? 3. Exercitus exercetur; mox pugnabit. 4. Si crudeles eritis, ab omnibus timebimini. 5. Equus ligneus armatis viris completus est. 6. Cato Romanos admonebat ut Carthago deleretur. 7. Monet ut pueri in armis exerceantur. 8. Naves in portu tempestate tentae erant. 9. Fossae aquā compleantur (R. 37 (*d*)). 10. Duci, a Romanis superato, auxilium praebitum est.

[1] The supine must first be found from the parts of the verbs shown Vocs. 51-54; give *neut.* only of those marked *

B. 1. The foot-soldiers were terrified by the sudden attack of the horsemen. 2. Why are you terrified by the fear of death? 3. In Britain the bodies of boys are exercised daily. 4. The ditch has been filled with stones. 5. The queen had been moved by the tears of the old man. 6. The wooden horse, filled with soldiers, was the cause of destruction to the Trojans. 7. The wise will advise that the bodies of boys be exercised daily. 8. The slaves, terrified by the cruelty of the master, were hastening into the wood. 9. Towns have been destroyed, fields have been ravaged. 10. Help had been offered to the Gauls by their allies.

Rule 60.—Verbs which govern the **dative** (R. 41) can only be used **impersonally in the passive.**

The masters are obeyed by the boy must be turned **It** *is obeyed to the masters by the boy.*

The masters **are obeyed** by the boy	Magistris a puero **parētur**
The tree has been injured	Arbori **nocitum est**

NOTE.—An **impersonal** verb is only used in the 3rd person singular. Its subject is always **it**[1] standing for no definite thing. An **impersonal verb** is therefore always **singular**, and the **participle**, if the verb is perfect passive, is always **neuter.**

EXERCISE 72.

Viva voce :—

I am obeyed	we are pleased
we are obeyed	the mothers had been pleased
the mother will be obeyed	we were being pleased
the tree will be injured	the leader will be displeased
the trees have been injured	I had not been obeyed
the flowers were injured	they had been injured

A. 1. Mulieres flebant quod urbs militibus completa est. 2.

[1] When *it* stands for a definite thing the verb is no longer impersonal, *e.g.*, The lord has bought a field; *it* is fertile.

Classis romana tempestate in portu tenebatur. 3. Omnes vici Gallorum deleti erant. 4. Tempestate fructibus nocitum erat. 5. Nostri, mortis metu moti, frumentum hostibus praebebant. 6. Servi, minis territi, arma parant. 7. Si magistro paritum erit, pueri laudabuntur. 8. Admone milites ut fossa lapidibus compleatur. 9. A Romanis Hannibal timebatur; ab eo Italia vastabatur. 10. Naves nostrae ab hostibus visae sunt.

B. 1. Let the treaties be kept by the allies. 2. Do not be terrified (R. 37 (*c*)) by angry words. 3. The wooden horse was seen on (= *in*) the beach. 4. The Trojans will not be terrified by the wooden horse filled[1] with soldiers. 5. The good mother will be obeyed by her children. 6. Who will rebuild (= build) the city destroyed by the Romans? 7. The tree had been injured by the great tempest. 8. I advise that corn be offered to our allies. 9. He warned the Gauls that the camp might not be moved across the river. 10. If I am obeyed by you I shall be kind to you.

Exercise 73.

On **regor** (Vocab. 55-7).

Viva voce :—

(1) he is being sent
it is being written
they were being written
you are being led
you will be led
they will be led
he is being covered
we may be covered
it will be defended
we shall be defended
we may be defended
they might be shut
thou art being conquered
thou wilt be conquered
you will be conquered
you were being sent
they might be sent
he is being covered

[1] What word does *filled* agree with? (§ 71.)

(2) Say the supine and then the perfect participle of the following verbs (R. 56):—

lego, emo, gero, claudo, scribo, pono
duco, instruo, vinco, tego, defendo, dico

(3) we have been led
we have been conquered
they have been shut
thou hast been led
you had been covered
I shall have been defended
you may have been defended
they might have been led
it had been drawn up
it had been waged
thou hadst been defended
they will have been shut

(4) the city had been defended
the cities had been defended
corn has been bought
the letter has been written
the letters have been read
war had been waged
war will have been waged
wars have been waged
the gates have been shut
laws had been read
men had been sent
a letter had been sent

Rule 61.—Cum (written also **quum**), *when*, takes the **subjunctive** whenever it implies **cause** as well as **time**, especially with the **imperfect** and **pluperfect.**

When the Gauls **had been conquered**, Cæsar returned to Italy — Cæsar, **cum** Galli **victi essent**, in Italiam rediit

In this case the clause *when the Gauls had been conquered* not only tells when Cæsar returned to Italy, but also states the cause.

NOTE.—If *when* denotes time merely, **cum** takes the **indicative.**

When I **was** in the city, my brother was at home — **Cum** in urbe **eram**, frater meus domi erat

EXERCISE 74.

A. 1. Epistola a puero scribitur; mox ad matrem mittetur. 2. Multos annos bella a Romanis gerebantur. 3. Puero pallium datum est ut corpus tegatur. 4. Carri empti sunt; frumentum

in urbem portatum est. 5. Si urbs defensa erit non vincemur. 6. Cæsar, cum castra posita essent, duces convocavit. 7. Galli, cum auxilium missum esset, facile Romanos vicerunt. 8. Portae claudantur (R. 37 (*d*)) ne opprimamur. 9. Stulta verba dicta sunt. 10. Eo proelio feminae a pueris defensae erant.

B. 1. Guards are being placed; the gates are being closed. 2. Hostages will be sent to Cæsar. 3. When[1] the hostages had been sent Cæsar decided to hasten into Italy. 4. The forces of the Romans were conquered by Hannibal. 5. Wine had been sent to the soldiers by the inhabitants. 6. Our [men], led by Cæsar, will not easily be conquered. 7. When the general had arrived in the plain, the gates of the city were shut. 8. Let us prepare arms that the enemy may be conquered. 9. If guards are placed at (= *ad* with accus.) the gates, our city will be defended. 10. We advised the citizens that the gates should be shut.

Exercise 75.

On **audior** (Vocab. 58-9).

Viva voce:—

(1)

they are being fortified	I may be punished
they will be fortified	he might be punished
they may be fortified	they might be punished
they were being fortified	thou wilt be bound
we shall be punished	thou mayst be bound
you were being punished	he might be bound

(2) Give the perfect participle (R. 56) of:—

erudio, finio, custodio, munio, sepelio
punio, nutrio, erudio, vincio, impedio

[1] Imitate the order of Rule 61.

(3) the boy has been trained they might have been fortified
the girls have been trained the slave has been bound
we had been nourished the slaves had been guarded
you will have been nourished the slaves will have been guarded
the bodies have been buried he may have been punished
the town has been fortified they may have been punished

Exercise 76.

A. 1. Multi occisi sunt; corpora eorum sepeliantur. 2. Urbs munītur fossa et vallo. 3. Socii convenerant ut Roma muniretur. 4. O senex, tua verba audiantur! Puellae magna cura a patre eruditae erant. 5. Cives monet ut urbs muris altis muniatur. 6. Hostes, armis gravibus impediti, aegre in castra pervēnērunt. 7. Galli, cum corpora occisorum sepulta essent, in suos vicos contendērunt. 8. Si captivi vincti erunt quis eos liberabit? 9. Decimo anno Troia, muris magnis munita, a Graecis capta est. 10. Scelera semper puniantur.

B. 1. The war is ended (§ 69); let the soldiers hasten into their native land. 2. The soldiers will be punished if they guard the captives badly. 3. Let us take care that the city is fortified. 4. The bodies have been well nourished; the minds have been well trained. 5. The captives, bound with chains, were being led into the camp. 6. After the battle the bodies of the slain were buried with great honour. 7. All labours will be finished by death. 8. Take care that the laws are obeyed. 9. Let the bodies be buried in the wood. 10. When the war had been ended the leader hastened into Italy.

VERB FORMS.

These may be used orally or in writing. They should be used for all conjugations by substituting other verbs from the vocabularies

ACTIVE.

1 we praise
he has praised
I had been praising
he may praise
5 to have praised
praising (part.)
thou hast praised
we were praising
I shall praise
10 he may praise
he might praise
to praise
we praised
you may praise
15 thou mightest praise
we had praised
they will have praised
of praising
I praised
20 they will praise
they must praise
by praising
they praise
let us praise
25 we shall have praised
they will have praised
do not praise
of praising
he is praising
30 they will be praising
he may praise
he will praise
he was praising
about to praise
35 let them praise
let them not praise
I was praising
we had praised
I might praise
40 to praise (supine)
I shall praise
I may praise
you (sing.) praise
he praised
45 they may praise
they would have praised
praise
do not praise
they have praised
50 thou wilt praise
he must praise
in praising (supine)
he might praise
thou wilt praise
55 he might have praised
you praise
thou hadst praised
we may have praised
they may have praised
60 they are praising
he was praising
thou wilt have praised
I may have praised
I shall have praised
65 give the perfect stem
we may praise
they would have praised
he will praise
he may praise
70 may he not praise
he was praising
he might praise
we shall praise
praise (sing.)
75 we had praised
thou mayst praise
about to praise
they praised
you were praising
80 let us not praise
you had praised
they may praise
you are praising
praise (plural)
85 they had praised
he may have praised
they had praised
we praised
you praised
90 of praising
they may have praised
they have praised
thou wast praising
let him praise
95 to be about to praise
they would have praised
we praised
do not praise
they may praise
100 to have praised
I may have praised
you will praise
they might have praised
we are about to praise
105 praising (participle)

Passive.

praised
they were praised
he had been praised
we shall be praised
they are praised
he will be praised
he may be praised
she has been praised
you will have been praised
to be praised
I may be praised
I shall be praised
they (fem.) had been praised
do not be praised
to have been praised
be ye praised
let them be praised
we shall be praised
thou art being praised
I shall be praised
he is praised
he was praised
he has been praised
you may be praised
you may have been praised
to have been praised
we are being praised
we were being praised
we may be praised
you (plural) are being praised
be praised (plural)
he might have been praised
they may have been praised
to be about to be praised
you had been praised
they are being praised
he might be praised
they may be praised
thou mayst be praised
I was being praised
they will be praised
they will have been praised
we should have been praised
you may be praised (pl.)
we had been praised
she will have been praised
they are being praised
they are praised (§ 69)
we may have been praised
they (fem.) had been praised
we might have been praised
I may have been praised
I shall have been praised
I am being praised
we might be praised
thou mayst be praised
thou wast being praised
they (fem.) had been praised
they (neut.) had been praised
he may have been praised
she may have been praised
thou art praised
thou art being praised
he will be praised
thou wilt be praised
thou mayst be praised
we shall be praised
he was praised
he might have been praised
they are being praised
be praised
I was being praised
thou wilt be praised
to be about to be praised
he is praised
he is being praised
thou mayst be praised
to be praised
they will be praised
to be about to be praised
thou art being praised
let us be praised
thou wast being praised
thou hast been praised
he was being praised
requiring to be praised
to be praised
thou mightest be praised
may we be praised!
they (neut.) had been praised
thou hadst been praised
we shall be praised
having been praised
they were being praised
they are being praised
thou wast being praised
they were praised
thou wouldst have been praised
to have been praised

Active and Passive.

he praises
he is being praised
they will praise
they will be praised
to praise
to be praised
they have praised
they have been praised
they had been praised
thou wilt be praised
he may praise
he may be praised
I am being praised
to have been praised
do not praise
do not be praised
he might praise
he might be praised
let them be praised
they are praising
they are being praised
of praising (gerund)
praised
they praised
they are praised
they are being praised
you had been praised
they (f.) had been praised
they (n.) had been praised
they may have praised
I may have praised
they will have praised
I may have praised
you may have praised
you may be praised
praising (gerund)
requiring to be praised
you praised
you are being praised
thou art praised
we may be praised
he may praise
let us praise
let us be praised
we (f.) had been praised
he had praised
they will have been praised
they may have been praised
to be praising
to be praised
they will praise
they will have been praised
I might have been praised
let us praise
let us be praised
praising (partic.)
praised
we are praising
we are praised
we are being praised
we were praised
you praised
you were praising
you were praised
you had been praised
to have praised
I may praise
I may be praised
he will praise
he will be praised
he will be praising
thou wast being praised
you were praising
be ye praised
be ye not praised
you were praising
you were being praised
they might praise
they might be praised
requiring to be praised
we are praising
we are praised
you were being praised
requiring to be praised
praised
to praise
to be praised
to have praised
to have been praised
praised
do not praise (plur.)
do not be praised (plur.)
they will have praised
they (f.) will have been praised
I might praise
I might be praised
thou wilt praise
thou wilt be praised
you are being praised
you will be praised
you may be praised
you might be praised
they must be praised
he was praising
he was being praised
to have been praised
to be praised

APPENDIX I.

PRONUNCIATION—QUANTITY.

1. In Latin all letters are pronounced; thus **mă-re** (two syllables).

2. When the voice dwells on a vowel in pronunciation the vowel is said to be **long**, *e.g.*, fāther; when the voice passes rapidly over a vowel it is said to be **short**, *e.g.*, făt.

A **long vowel** is indicated by a straight line placed over the vowel; a **short vowel** is indicated by a curved line. Thus Rōma, rŏsa.

3. Rules for the **quantity** (*i.e.*, length) **of vowels.**

(*a*) A vowel standing before another vowel in the same word but not in the same syllable is always **short**; *e.g.*, *rĕi*, *facĭo*.

(*b*) A vowel standing before two consonants[1] or -x is **long**; *e.g.*, *mēnsa*, *bēllum*.

(*c*) All diphthongs are long; *e.g.*, *mensæ*.

When two vowels are pronounced rapidly in succession so as to form only one sound they are called a **diphthong**.

4. Pronunciation of vowels.

ā (fātum) like fāther, not like plāy;	**ă** (răpit) like făt.
ē (mēta) like māte, not like mēre;	**ĕ** (frĕta) like frĕt.
ī (fīdo) like pēer, not like fīre;	**ĭ** (plĭco) like fĭt.
ō (nōtus) like nōte;	**ŏ** (nŏta) like nŏt.
ū (tūto) like fōōl, not like acūte;	**ŭ** (cūtis) like fŭll, not like accŭrate.

The sound of **diphthongs** is obtained by running together the two component vowel-sounds. Thus **ae** = **a** + **e**, *i.e.* like *ai* in *a*isle.

ae (portae) = **a͡e** like *a*isle, not like pl*ay*.
au (aurum) = **a͡u** like h*ou*se, not like *aw*ful.
oe (poena) = **o͡e** like b*oi*l, not like d*ea*n or pl*ay*.

[1] A vowel before two consonants is said to be long "by position". A vowel before a single consonant may be long or short (which it is must be learnt from a dictionary). Such a vowel is said to be long (or short, as the case may be) "by nature".

4 (*a*). When the letter **i** stands before a vowel in the same syllable it is a consonant, and is often called **consonantal I** (or semi-vowel), *e.g.*, *iudex*. About the fifteenth century **J** was introduced to represent this consonantal I. Thus, *jūdex* for *iūdex*; *mājor* for *māior*. But it seems preferable, seeing that the Romans never used *J*, to write **I** in all cases.

Consonantal I is pronounced like the English y.

5. Consonants c, g, s, t are always hard.

c (cepi, accepi, scio) like *c*at; **cc** like Mala*cc*a; **sc** like *sc*andal; (not like a*c*id, a*cc*ept, fa*sc*inate).

g (gero, agger) like *g*et and ra*gg*ed, not like *g*in or exa*gg*erate

t (fortis, fortia) like na*t*ive.

s (rosa, res) like *s*it, thi*s*; not like ri*s*e.

-ci, -si, -ti (ocius, sponsio, natio) not like appre*ci*ate, respon*si*ons, na*ti*on, but with the sounds of **c, s** and **t** shown above.

5 (*a*). **Consonantal i and u (v).**

i (j), *e.g.* jacio, like *y* in *y*ou, not like *j*am.

u (v), *e.g.* volo, like *w* in *w*e, not like *v*ery.

5 (*b*). **r is always trilled even in the middle or end of a word.**

6. Accentuation.—Accent is the stress which is given to a syllable in pronunciation. Thus in *fáther* the first syllable has the stress, in *retúrn* the second syllable has the accent.

6 (*a*). In **dividing** Latin words **into syllables**, as far as possible each syllable must **end with a vowel.** Thus, *Ro-ma-ni, ma-ior, do-mi-nus.*

7. Rules for the accentuation of Latin words:—

(*a*) In words of two syllables the first syllable is accented; *e.g.*, *méa, tándem.*

(*b*) In words of more than two syllables the accent is given to the last syllable but one if that syllable has a long vowel; *e.g.*, *Romāni, eméndo.*

(*c*) In words of more than two syllables, when the last but one has a short vowel, the accent is given to the last syllable but two; *e.g.*, *dóminus.*

The last syllable but one is called the **penultimate** or **penult**; the last syllable but two is called the **antepenultimate** or **antepenult.**

APPENDIX II.

IRREGULARITIES OF DECLENSION.

1. First Declension.—(*a*) The dative and ablative plural of **dea**, *goddess;* **fīlia**, *daughter*, end in **-ābus**, *e.g.*, deābus, etc. This is to distinguish these words from the corresponding cases of the masculine, *e.g.*, *fīliis*, to the sons; *fīliabus*, to the daughters.

The same rule is sometimes followed, especially when a distinction of sex is necessary, with a few other words, *e.g.*, **lĭberta**, *freed woman;* **mūla**, *she-mule.*

(*b*) An old genitive singular in **-as** is found in **păter fămĭlĭās**, *father of a family;* acc. **patrem familias**; plur. **patres familias.**

This form, which is sometimes written all in one word, is also used with *māter*, *fīlius* and *fīlia*, *e.g.*, **mater familias.**

2. Second Declension.—(*a*) The genitive singular of words ending in **-ius** and **-ium** sometimes contracts *-ii* into *-i.*

(*b*) The genitive plural **-um** instead of **-orum** is sometimes used, especially with names of coins, weights and measures, *e.g.*, **sestertius** (a coin = 2½d.), genitive plural **sestertium**; **dĕcemvir** (member of a committee of ten), **dĕcemvĭrum.**

(*c*) **Deus**, *god*, has vocative **deus**; nominative and vocative plural **deī, dii, dī**; dative and ablative plural **deīs, diīs, dīs**; genitive plural **deōrum, deum, dīvum, dīvom.**

3. Third Declension.—(*a*) **Bōs** (masc. or fem.), **bŏvis**, *ox*, has exceptional forms: genitive plural, **boum**; dative and ablative, **būbus** or **bōbus.**

(*b*) **Iupiter** (= Jŏv-păter), *Jupiter*, has Acc. **Iŏvem**, Gen. **Iŏvis**, Dat. **Iŏvi**, Abl. **Iŏve.**

(*c*) **Vīs** (fem.), *violence*, in the singular has only accusative **vim**, ablative **vī.** In the plural it changes its meaning and is declined throughout: **vīrēs**, *strength*, **vīrēs, vīrium, vīrĭbus. vīrĭbus.**

4. Fourth Declension.—**Dŏmus** (fem.), *house*, is thus declined:—

Sing. **dŏmus, dŏmum, dŏmūs, dŏmuī, dŏmŏ**
Plur. **dŏmūs, dŏmōs, dŏmuum, dŏmĭbus, dŏmĭbus**

5. Fifth Declension.—**Rēs publĭca** (fem.), *state*, is the noun *res* and the adjective *publica;* each word is separately declined: gen. *rei publicae*, etc.

A similar word is **iūsiūrandum** (neut.), *oath*, gen. **iūris-iūrandi**, etc.

APPENDIX III.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

Masculine nouns in *thick* type; **feminine** in *italics;* **neuter** in ordinary type.

A. *Gender by meaning:*—

(1) Names of **males, months, winds, mountains** and **peoples** are **masculine.**

Exceptions. (*a*) *Mountains: Aetna, Hybla, Īda*, etc., Pēlion and *Alpes* (plur.).

(*b*) *Rivers: Allia, Lēthē, Styx.*

(2) Names of *females, plants, countries, islands* and *cities* are *feminine.*

Exceptions. (*a*) *Plants:* **ăcanthus** (a prickly plant), **călămus** (reed), **ŏleaster** (wild olive), etc. All in -um are neuter, *e.g.*, lĭgustrum (privet); also many third declension words in -er, *e.g.*, ăcer, -ĕris (maple), păpāver, -ĕris (poppy), etc.

(*b*) *Cities*: Plurals in -i, as **Delphī**; also **Cănōpus**, etc. All in -um are neuter. Third declension in -e and -ur are neuter.

(3) Indeclinable words and verbs, etc., used as nouns are neuter, *e.g.*, fas, alpha, amāre.

B. *Gender by termination :—*

First Declension. — All *feminine.*

Exceptions. Names of men, **nauta, agricola, Belga.**

Second Declension.—
Nouns in **-us** and **-er** are **masculine.** Nouns in -um are neuter.

Exceptions :—
Fem. : alvus (belly), *cŏlus* (distaff), *dŏmus* (house), *hŭmus* (ground), *vannus* (fan).
Neut. : pĕlăgus (sea), vīrus (poison), vulgus (sometimes masc.) (common people).

Third Declension.—
(*a*) **Masculine** endings :
er, or, os.
es, increasing in the genitive.
o, except *do, go, io.*

Exceptions :—
er. Neut. : cădāver, -ĕris (corpse), ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris (journey), păpāver, -ĕris (poppy), tūber, -ĕris (swelling), ūber, -ĕris (teat), vēr, vēris (spring), verber, -ĕris (lash). *Fem. : linter, -tris* (skiff).
or. Neut. : aequor, -ŏris (sea), marmor, -ŏris (marble), cŏr, cordis (heart). *Fem. : arbor, -ŏris* (tree).
os. Neut. : ŏs (ossis) (bone), ōs (ōris) (mouth). *Fem. : cōs, cōtis* (whetstone), *dōs, dōtis* (dowry).
es. Neut. : aes, aeris (brass). *Fem. : compēs, -ēdis* (fetter), *mercēs, -ēdis* (pay), *mergĕs, -ĭtis* (sheaf), *quiēs, -ētis* (rest), *rĕ-*

(*b*) *Feminine* endings:

do, *go*, *io*.

as, *is*, *aus*, *x*.

es, not increasing in the genitive.

s, preceded by a consonant.

quiēs, *-ētis* (repose), *sĕgĕs*, *-ĕtis* (harvest), *tĕgĕs*, *-ĕtis* (mat).

o. *Fem.*: *căro*, *carnis* (flesh)

Exceptions:—

do. **Masc.**: **ordo**, **-ĭnis** (series), **cardo**, **-ĭnis** (hinge).

go. **Masc.**: **lĭgo**, **-ōnis** (mattock), **margo**, **-ĭnis** (edge).

io. Common[1] nouns, *e.g.* **pāpĭlio**, **-iōnis** (butterfly), **pūgio**, **-iōnis** (dagger), **stellio**, **-iōnis** (lizard).

as. **Masc.**: **as**, **assis** (pound), **ĕlĕphas**, **-ntis** (elephant), **vās**.[2] Neut.: vās,[2] fās (indecl.) (right), nĕfās (indecl.) (crime).

is. **Masc.**: **amnis** (river), **anguis** (*fem.*)[3] (snake), **axis** (axle), **cassis** (gen. **-is**) (net), **collis** (hill), **cĭnis**, **-ĕris** (ashes), **crīnis** (hair), **ensis** (sword), **fascis** (bundle), **fīnis** (*fem.*) (end), **follis** (ball), **fūnis** (rope), **ignis** (fire), **lăpis**, **-ĭdis** (stone), **mensis** (month), **orbis** (circle), **pānis** (bread), **piscis** (fish), **postis** (doorpost), **pulvis**, **-ĕris**

[1] The feminine nouns in *io* are abstract.

[2] Vās, vădis (masc.), *a surety*; vās, vāsis (neut.), *vessel*, *dish*. In the plural vās makes **vāsa**, **vasorum**, etc., like a second declension neuter.

[3] This means that in some authors the word is feminine though it is usually masculine.

(dust), **sanguis, -ĭnis** (blood), **torris** (firebrand), **unguis** (nail of finger, etc.), **vectis** (lever), **vermis** (worm).

x. **Masc.: călix, -ĭcis** (goblet), **cōdex, -ĭcis** (book), **cortex, -ĭcis** (*fem.*) (bark of tree), **grex, grĕgis** (herd), **pollex, -ĭcis** (thumb), **sĭlex, -ĭcis** (*fem.*) (flint), **vertex, -ĭcis** (whirlpool).

s. **Masc.: mons, -ntis** (mountain), **pons, -ntis** (bridge), **fons, -ntis** (fountain), **dens, -ntis** (tooth), **quadrans, -ntis** (quarter), **rŭdens, -ntis** (*fem.*) (rigging).

(*c*) Neuter endings :—
c, a, t, e, l, n.
ar, ur.
ŭs (short).

Exceptions :—

l. Masc.: săl, sălis (salt), **sōl, sōlis** (sun).

n. **Masc.: lĭĕn, -ēnis** (spleen), **pectĕn, -ĭnis** (comb).

ur. **Masc.: fūr, fūris** (thief), **furfŭr, -ŭris** (bran), **turtŭr, -ŭris** (turtledove), **vultŭr, -ŭris** (vulture).

us. *Fem.: pĕcus* (*-ŭdis*) (a head of cattle), and all with genitive *-ūtis* or *-ūdis* :—

incūs, -ūdis (anvil), *iŭventūs, -tūtis* (youth).

pălūs, -ūdis (marsh), *salūs, -ūtis* (safety).

sĕnectūs, -ūtis (old age), *servĭtūs, -ūtis* (slavery).

tellūs, -ūris (earth).

	Masc.: lĕpus, -ŏris (hare), **mūs, -ūris** (mouse), **grūs, grŭis** (*fem.*) (crane), **sūs, sŭis** (*fem.*) (pig).
Fourth Declension.—us masc., u neut.	**Exceptions.** *Fem.: ăcus* (needle), *mănus* (hand), *dŏmus* (house), *īdūs* (pl.) (ides), *portĭcus* (porch), *trĭbus* (tribe).
Fifth Declension. — All *feminine.*	**Exceptions. Masc.: diēs** (*fem.* in poetry) (day), and **mĕrīdiēs** (midday).

APPENDIX IV.

PARSING.

The most important words, *verb* and *noun* (or pronoun), are set out in detail. Other parts of speech can be parsed on the plan shown in the examples. In all cases begin by stating the part of speech.

Verb. (*a*) Give the parts of the verb.
(*b*) Person, number, tense, mood, voice.
(*c*) Agrees with subject and governs direct object (if a trans. v.).
(*d*) Explain the mood.[1]

Noun. (*a*) Give nominative and genitive singular.
(*b*) Case, number, with reason for case.

Examples of Parsing.

(*a*) *Magnus* est *dolor militum*, comites *sepelientium*. (*b*) Instruite aciem, milites, *ne* hostes nos *vincant*. (*c*) In *duce* erat *plus* audaciae quam *sapientiae*. (*d*) Proxima *nocte* socios *in* arcem *clam* duxit.

[1] This only applies to the subjunctive. If the verb is indicative or imperative (*d*) may be omitted.

magnus . . adjective, positive, masculine, nominative, agrees with *dolor*.

dolor . . . (*a*) noun from dŏlor, dŏlōris (masc.).
(*b*) nominative singular, subject after *est*.

militum . . (*a*) noun from mīles, mīlĭtis (masc.).
(*b*) genitive plural, governed by *dolor*.[1]

sepelientium (*a*) verb from sĕpĕlio, -īre, -īvi, sĕpultum, 4.
(*b*) present participle.
(*c*) genitive case, plural, agrees with *militum*.

ne . . . . conjunction joining *Instruite* . . . *milites* to *hostes* . . . *vincant*.

vincant . . (*a*) verb from vinco, -ĕre, vīci, victum, 3.
(*b*) 3rd person plural, present subjunctive, active.
(*c*) agrees with subject hostes, and governs *nos* in accusative.
(*d*) it is subjunctive because it denotes negative purpose.

dŭce . . . (*a*) noun from dux, dŭcis (masc.).
(*b*) ablative singular, governed by preposition *in*.

plus . . . adjective, comparative neuter of *multus*, used as a noun governing *audaciae*.

sapientiae . (*a*) noun from sapientia, -ae (fem.).
(*b*) genitive singular, governed by *plus* (understood).

nocte . . . (*a*) noun from nox, noctis (fem.).
(*b*) ablative singular, denoting time when.

in. . . . . preposition governing accusative *arcem* (motion towards).

clam . . . adverb, modifying *duxit*.

[1] A genitive is always governed by the noun denoting the thing possessed, *e.g.*, a dog's collar, *dog's* governed by *collar*.

VOCABULARIES.

*** In these vocabularies the **quantity** (App. I., § 3, p. 120) of a **vowel** is not marked, as a rule, in the following cases:—

(*a*) A **vowel** standing **before two consonants**, which is always long.
(*b*) A **vowel** standing **before another vowel**, which is always short.
(*c*) **Diphthongs**, which are always **long.**

VOCABULARIES 1 AND 2.

naută (m.), *sailor.*
agrĭcŏlă (m.), *farmer.*
ăquă (f.), *water.*
terră (f.), *land.*
ămăt, (he, she, it) *loves.*
rēgīnă (f.), *queen.*
pŭellă (f.), *girl.*
căsă (f.), *cottage.*
insŭlă (f.), *island.*
laudăt, (he, she, it) *praises.*

VOCABULARIES 3 AND 4.

ăquĭlă (f.), *eagle.*
ălă (f.), *wing.*
hastă (f.), *spear.*
săpientiă (f.), *wisdom.*
dăt, (he, she, it) *gives.*
fīlia (f.), *daughter.*
rŏsă (f.), *rose.*
vĭă (f.), *way.*
pĕcūniă, *money.*
monstrăt, (he, she, it) *shows.*

VOCABULARY 5.

monstrăt, (he, she, it) *shows.*
terrĕt, (he, she, it) *terrifies.*
hăbĕt, (he, she, it) *has.*
monstrant, (they) *show.*
terrent, (they) *terrify.*
hăbent, (they) *have.*

VOCABULARY 6.

cŏrōna (f.), *crown.*
silvă (f.), *a wood.*
incŏlă (m.), *inhabitant.*
vulnĕrăt, (he, she, it) *wounds.*
vulnĕrant, (they) *wound.*
cŏlumbă (f.), *dove.*
spīnă (f.), *thorn.*
vītă (f.), *life.*
ornăt, (he, she, it) *adorns.*
ornant, (they) *adorn.*

VOCABULARY 7.

carrus, -i (m.), *cart.*
ĕquus,[1] -i (m.), *horse.*
vīcus, -i (m.), *village.*
hortus, -i (m.), *garden.*
agnus, -i (m.), *lamb.*
lŭpus, -i (m.), *wolf.*
taurus, -i (m.), *bull.*
ventus, -i (m.), *wind.*
ămīcus, -i (m.), *friend.*
dŏmīnus, -i (m.), *lord, master.*
et[2] (conj.), *and.*
nōn[2] (adv.), *not.*

VOCABULARY 8.

Claudĭus, -i (m.), *Claudius.*
dĕus, -i (m.), *god.*
fīlĭus, -i (m.), *son.*
flŭvĭus, -i (m.), *river.*
glădĭus, -i (m.), *sword.*
nuntĭus, -i (m.), *messenger.*
Rōmānus, -i (m.), *a Roman.*
Gallus, -i (m.), *a Gaul.*

VOCABULARY 9.

ăger, agri (m.), *field.*
ăper, apri (m.), *wild boar.*
culter, cultri (m.), *knife.*
făber, fabri (m.), *workman.*
lĭber, libri (m.), *book.*
mĭnister, ministri (m.), *servant.*
est, *is.*
sunt, *are.*
currĭt, (he, she, it) *runs.*
currunt, (they) *run.*
nunc, *now.*
ămīcus, -i (m.), *friend.*

VOCABULARY 10.

gĕner, gĕnĕri (m.), *son-in-law.*
sŏcer, sŏcĕri (m.), *father-in-law.*
signĭfer, signĭfĕri (m.), *standard-bearer.*
vesper, vespĕri (m.), *evening.*
vĭr, vĭri (m.), *man.*
lībĕri,[3] **lībĕrōrum** (m.), *children.*

---

[1] In words like *equus* qu represents one sound; the endings are obtained by modifying the final *-us*. Thus *qu* occurs in every case.

Thus sing. ĕqu-ŭs, ĕqu-ĕ, ĕqu-um, ĕqu-ī, ĕqu-ō, ĕqu-ō.
plur. ĕqu-ī, ĕqu-ī, ĕqu-ōs, ĕqu-ōrum, ĕqu-īs, ĕqu-īs.

[2] Adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions are not declined.

[3] **Liberi** is only used (in good Latin) in the plural. It is really the plural of the adjective *lĭber*, free. When the singular word *child* is required it is translated by puer, filius, filia, infans, etc.

Carefully distinguish **lĭbri, libros**, etc., *books*,
and **lībĕri, lībĕros**, etc., *children*

VOCABULARY 11.

argentum, -i (n.), *silver*.
aurum, -i (n.), *gold*.
dōnum, -i (n.), *gift*.
oppĭdum, -i (n.), *town*.
armă,[1] **armōrum** (n.), *arms*.
castră,[1] **castrōrum** (n.), *camp*.
pĕrīcŭlum, -i (n.), *danger*.
praemĭum, -i (n.), *reward*.
scūtum, -i (n.), *shield*.
templum, -i (n.), *temple*.
dēlectăt, (he, she, it) *delights*.
dēlectant, (they) *delight*.

VOCABULARY 12.

causa, -ae (f.), *cause*.
dĕa, -ae (f.), *goddess*.
īra, -ae (f.), *anger*.
laetĭtia, -ae (f.), *joy*.
pătria, -ae (f.), *fatherland*.
praeda, -ae (f.), *prey, booty*.
saepĕ (adv.), *often*.
Germānia, -ae (f.), *Germany*.
Brĭtannia, -ae (f.), *Britain*.
mălum, -i (n.), *evil*.
pĕlăgus,[2] -i (n.), *sea*.
Diāna, -ae (f.), *Diana*.
Neptūnus, -i (m.), *Neptune*.
semper (adv.), *always*.

VOCABULARY 13.

ăcūtus, -a, -um, *sharp*.
albus, -a, -um, *white*.
bŏnus, -a, -um, *good*.
clārus, -a, -um, *famous*.
fĕrus, -a, -um, *wild*.
grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing*.
stultus, -a, -um, *foolish*.
longus, -a, -um, *long*.
magnus, -a, -um, *great, large*.
multus, -a, -um, *much, many*.
parvus, -a, -um, *small, little*.
tĭmĭdus, -a, -um, *timid*.
vălĭdus, -a, -um, *strong*.
tŭus, -a, -um, *thy*.

VOCABULARY 14.

lātus, -a, -um, *broad, wide*.
iustus, -a, -um, *just*.
altus, -a, -um, *high*.
mūrus, -i (m.), *wall*.
servus, -i (m.), *slave*.
flŭvius, -i (m.), *river*.

---

[1] These words are neuter plurals. They must be carefully distinguished from First Declension words. In the case of **castra**, *camp*, though the English is singular the Latin is plural, and all verbs and adjectives agreeing with *castra* **must be plural.**

[2] Remember that this word is neuter (App. III. (B), p. 124) and that its accusative is *pelagus* (§ 19).

VOCABULARIES 15 AND 16.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, *sick.*
măcer, macra, macrum, *thin.*
nĭger, nigra, nigrum, *black.*
noster, nostra, nostrum, *our.*
vester, vestra, vestrum, *your.*
fēmĭnă, -ae (f.), *woman.*
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beautiful.*
rŭber, rubra, rubrum, *red.*
săcer, sacra, sacrum, *sacred.*
tĭmĕt, (he, she, it) *fears.*
tĭment, (they) *fear.*

VOCABULARY 17.

bellum, -i (n.), *war.*
consĭlium, -i (n.), *plan.*
verbum, -i (n.), *word*
ănĭmus, -i (m.), *mind.*
falsus, -a, -um, *false.*
ăvĭdus, -a, -um, *greedy.*
īrācundus, -a, -um, *angry.*
nōtus, -a, -um, *known.*

VOCABULARY 18.

Gender.[1] Words ending in **-x** are feminine, except names of **men.**

pax, pāc-is (f.), *peace.*
vox, vōc-is (f.), *voice.*
lux, lūc-is (f.), *light.*
nux, nŭc-is (f.), *nut.*
grex, grĕg-is (m.), *flock.*
nix, nĭv-is (f.), *snow.*
lex, lēg-is (f.), *law.*
terrĕt, (he, she, it) *terrifies.*
terrĕt-ur, (he, she, it) *is terrified.*
vĭdĕt, (he, she, it) *sees.*
lūna, -ae (f.), *moon.*
captīvus, -i (m.), *captive.*
iūcundus, -a, -um, *pleasant.*
perniciōsus, -a, -um, *destructive.*
nĕcessārius, -a, -um, *necessary.*
albus, -a, -um, *white.*
cūr ? *why ?*
terrent, (they) *terrify.*
terrent-ŭr, (they) *are terrified.*
vĭdent, (they) *see.*

VOCABULARY 19.

Gender. The ending **-es** increasing in the genitive is masculine, ***e.g.*** pēs, pĕdis.

laus, laud-is (f.), *praise.*
obsĕs, obsĭd-is (c.), *hostage.*
custos, custōd-is (m.), *guardian.*
ĕquĕs, equĭt-is (m.), *horse soldier.*
pĕdĕs, pĕdĭt-is (m.), *foot soldier.*
mittĭt, (he, she, it) *sends.*
cŏmĕs, cŏmĭt-is (m.), *companion.*
cīvĭtas, cīvĭtāt-is (f.), *state.*
cĕlĕrĭtas, cĕlĕrĭtāt-is (f.), *speed.*
hĭems, hĭĕm-is (f.), *winter.*
quis ? *who ?*
mittunt, (they) *send.*

[1] The gender of the third declension is given in full in Appendix III., p. 123. For the present however the pupil had better confine himself to the short rules given with the vocabularies.

VOCABULARY 20.

Gender. Words ending in **-or** and **-os** are masculine, except *arbor* (a tree), which is *feminine*.

NOTE.—The genitive **-ōris**[1] (long ō) is a sign of the masculine gender.

consul, consŭl-is (m.), *consul.*[2]
victor, victōr-is (m.), *conqueror.*
clāmor, clāmōr-is (m.), *shout.*
cŏlor, cŏlōr-is (m.), *colour.*
lăbor, lăbōr-is (m.), *labour.*
ŏdor, ŏdōr-is (m.), *smell.*
sōl, sōl-is (m.), *sun.*
Gallĭa, -ae (f.), *Gaul.*
nunc (adv.), *now.*
tunc (adv.), *then.*
flōs, flōr-is (m.), *flower.*
arbor, arbŏr-is (f.), *tree.*
sŏror, sŏrōr-is (f.), *sister.*
māter, mātr-is (f.), *mother.*
păter, patr-is (m.), *father.*
anser, ansĕr-is (m.), *goose.*
Caesar, Caesăr-is (m.), *Cæsar.*
Ītălĭa, -ae, *Italy.*
ĕrat, (he, she, it) *was.*
ĕrant, (they) *were.*

VOCABULARY 22.

Gender. **-do, -go** and **-io** are feminine endings.

lĕgĭo, lĕgiōnis (f.), *legion.*[3]
Scīpio, Scīpiōnis (m.), *Scipio.*
Āfrĭca, Āfrĭcae (f.), *Africa.*
porta, portae (f.), *gate.*
virgo, virgĭnis (f.), *maiden.*
mŭlier, mŭliĕris (f.), *woman.*
fēmĭnă, -ae, *woman* (= *female*).
mortŭus, mortŭa, mortuum, *dead.*

VOCABULARY 23.

Gender. The genitive **-ōris** is masculine, *e.g.*, ŏdor, ŏdōris; **-ŏris** (or **-ĕris**) is neuter, *e.g.*, tempus, temp-ŏris.

carmen, carmĭnis (n.), *song.*
fulmen, fulmĭnis (n.), *lightning.*
gĕnus, gĕnĕris (n.), *kind, sort.*
vulnus, vulnĕris (n.), *wound.*
lītus, lītŏris (n.), *shore.*
tempus, tempŏris (n.), *time.*
frīgus, frīgŏris (n.), *cold.*
aestās, aestātis (f.), *summer.*

---

[1] Students of French should note this rule with great care, the derived words in French being, with three exceptions, all feminine, *e.g.*, **la fleur, la couleur.**

[2] In Rome two consuls were elected every year. The consuls were the highest magistrates in Rome. Among their duties one was to lead the army or part of the army in war.

[3] A legion was a division of the Roman army. At first it consisted of 300 horsemen (*equites*) and 3000 footmen (*pedites*), but in later times the number of footmen was increased.

sīdus, sīdĕris (n.), *constellation.*
stella, stellae (f.), *star.*
historĭa, historĭae (f.), *story.*
nox, noctis (f.), *night.*
vărĭus,[1] **-a, -um,** *various.*
antīquus,[1] **-a, -um,** *old, ancient.*

VOCABULARY 25.

Gender. (*a*) Words ending in **-is** and **-es** are *feminine.*

Common **masculine** exceptions are **collis** (m.), *hill,* **fīnis** (m.), *end,* **ignis** (m.), *fire,* and **mensis** (m.), *month.*

(*b*) Words ending in **s** after a consonant (*e.g.*, **urbs, pars,** etc.) are *feminine.*

Important **masculine** exceptions are **mons, fons, pons, dens.**

auris, auris (f.), *ear.*
ăvis, ăvis (f.), *bird.*
cīvis, cīvis (c.), *citizen.*
ignis, ignis (m.), *fire.*
mensis, mensis (m.), *month.*
testis, testis (m.), *witness.*
turris, turris (f.), *tower.*
porta, portae (f.), *gate.*
părăt, (he, she, it) *prepares.*
cănis, cănis (c.), *dog.*
iŭvĕnis, iŭvĕnis (m.), *young man.*
vulpēs, vulpīs (f.), *fox.*
arx, arcis (f.), *citadel.*
nox, noctis (f.), *night.*
dens, dentis (m.), *tooth.*
mons, montis (m.), *mountain.*
vălĭdus, -a, -um, *strong.*
părant, (they) *prepare.*

VOCABULARY 26.

nāvis, nāvis (f.), *ship.*
rētĕ, rētis (n.), *net.*
piscis, piscis (m.), *fish.*
piscātor, -ōris (m.), *fisherman.*
vēnātor, -ōris (m.), *hunter.*
nonnullus, -a, -um, *some.*
prīmus, -a, -um, *first.*
vectīgal, vectīgālis (n.), *tax.*
annus, -i (m.), *year.*
rīpa, -ae (f.), *bank* (of a river).
mŏlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome.*
frīgĭdus, -a, -um, *cold.*
vīvit, (he, she, it) *lives.*
vīvunt, (they) *live.*

VOCABULARY 27.

bellum, -i (n.), *war.*
proelĭum, -i (n.), *battle.*
pugna, -ae (f.), *a fight.*
săgitta, -ae (f.), *arrow.*
cĭbus, -i (m.), *food.*
rĕgio, -ōnis (f.), *region, district.*
nāvis, -is (f.), *ship.*
fŭga, -ae (f.), *flight.*

---

[1] It should be remembered that the feminine and neuter of adjectives in *-us* are got by changing the *-us* to *-a* and *-um.* Thus *vari-us, vari-a, vari-um.*

VOCABULARY 28.

brĕvis, -e, *short.*
crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*
dulcis, -e, *sweet.*
fertĭlis, -e, *fertile.*
fĭdēlis -e, *faithful.*
omnis, -e, *all.*
tristis, -e, *sad.*
turpis, -e, *disgraceful, base.*
ūtĭlis, -e, *useful.*
fortis, -e, *brave.*

VOCABULARY 29.

audax, -ācis, *bold.*
fĕrox, -ōcis, *fierce.*
pŏtens, -entis, *powerful.*
sŏlum, -i (n.), *soil.*
praesens, -entis, *present.*
absens, -entis, *absent.*
săpĭens, -entis, *wise.*
mălum, -i (n.), *evil.*

VOCABULARY 31.

brĕvĭor, -ĭŭs, *shorter.*
dulcĭor, -ĭŭs, *sweeter.*
fertĭlior, -ĭus, *more fertile.*
pŏtentĭor, -ĭus, *more powerful.*
ūtĭlior, -ĭus, *more useful.*
făcĭlior, -ĭus, *easier.*
făcĭlis, -ĕ, *easy.*
lĕvis,[1] -ĕ, *light, unimportant.*
imprūdens, -entis, *imprudent.*
quam,[2] *than.*

VOCABULARY 33.

ăcus, -ūs (f.), *needle.*
arcus, -ūs (m.), *bow.*
adventus, -ūs (m.), *arrival.*
currus, -ūs (m.), *chariot.*
exercĭtus, -ūs (m.), *army.*
impĕtus -ūs (m.), *attack.*
sŭpĕrăt, (he, she, it) *overcomes.*
sŭpĕrant, (they) *overcome.*
mănus, -ūs (f.), *hand.*
portus, -ūs (m.), *harbour.*
cornu, -ūs (n.), *horn, wing of an army.*
gĕnu, -ūs (n.), *knee.*
dūrus, -a, -um, *hard.*
cōpia, -ae (f.), *plenty.*
dūcĭt, (he, she, it) *leads.*
dūcunt, (they) *lead.*

---

[1] **Lĕvis** is an adjective; the noun *light* (*e.g.*, the light of the sun) is *lux*. See Vocab. 18.

In English the same word may be sometimes a noun, sometimes an adjective, etc., according as it is used. Thus in *An* **iron** *bridge* "iron" is an adjective, but in **Iron** *is a useful metal* "iron" is a noun. In Latin the noun iron = *ferrum*, the adjective iron = *ferrĕus* (declined like bonus).

[2] *Quam* is a conjunction. Adverbs, prepositions and conjunctions in Latin are not declined. They are often called **indeclinable** words.

VOCABULARY 34.

conspectus, -ūs (m.), *sight, view.*
ĕquĭtātus,[1] -ūs (m.), *cavalry.*
fructus, -ūs (m.), *fruit.*
lăcus, -ūs (m.), *lake.*
quercus,[2] -ūs (f.), *oak.*
mĕtus, -ūs (m.), *fear.*
transĭtus, -ūs (m.), *crossing.*
trans[3] (prep. gov. accus.), *across, over.*
Alpēs, Alpĭum (f. pl.), *the Alps.*
Hannĭb-al,[4] **-ălis**, *Hannibal.*
ex (prep. gov. abl.), *out of.*
victōrĭa, -ae (f.), *victory.*
făcĭt, (he, she, it) *makes.*
făcĭunt, (they) *make.*
pugnăt, (he, she, it) *fights.*
pugnant, (they) *fight*

VOCABULARY 35.

ăci-ēs, -ei (f.), *line*[5] *of battle.*
făci-ēs, -ei (f.), *face.*
plănĭti-ēs, -ei (f.), *plain.*
sp-ēs, -ei (f.), *hope.*
rēs, -ei (f.), *thing.*
rēs sĕcundae, *prosperity.*
rēs adversae, *adversity.*
rēs pūblĭca, *the state, the commonwealth.*
dext-er, -ra, -rum, *right* (adj.).
sĭnist-er, -ra, -rum, *left.*
sĕcund-us, -a, -um, *favourable.*
advers-us, -a, -um, *adverse, unfavourable.*
pūblĭcus -a, -um, *public.*
ĭnĭtĭ-um, -i (n.), *beginning.*
compl-ĕt, (he, she, it) *fills.*
compl-ent, (they) *fill.*

NOTES TO VOCABULARY 35.—(1) *Res secundae*, literally favourable things or circumstances, and *res adversae* are plural.

(2) *Res publica* is often written as one word, *respublica*. Even then its cases are still formed by declining each word separately, *e.g.*, accusative **rempublicam**, dative **reipublicae.**

VOCABULARY 37.

cārus, -a, -um, *dear.*
densus, -a, -um, *dense.*
Belgă, -ae (m.), *a Belgian.*
sŏcĭus, -i (m.), *ally.*

---

[1] **ĕquus**, -i, *horse;* **ĕques, equĭtis**, *horseman;* **ĕquest-er, -ris, -re** *equestrian.*

[2] Names of **trees** are *feminine* because *arbor* (f.) (Voc. 20, p. 133) is understood.

[3] Most Latin prepositions govern the accusative case, *e.g.*, **trans fluvium, trans montem.** Some govern the ablative, *e.g.*, **ex urbe** = out of the city.

[4] Hannibal (B.C. 252-182), a celebrated Carthaginian general, who fought against the Romans in the Second Punic War.

[5] *I.e.*, the army arranged in lines for fighting. An army on the march is called **agmen, agmĭnis** (neut.). *Acies* also means *keenness, e.g., oculorum acies.*

tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*
vĭŏlens, -entis, *violent.*
ūtĭlis, -e, *useful.*
Rhŏdănus,[1] **-i** (m.), *the Rhône.*
Rhēnus, -i (m.), *the Rhine.*
pāx, -cis (f.), *peace.*
ŏpus, -ĕris (n.), *work.*
cănis, -is (m.), *dog.*
tēlum, -i (n.), *weapon, dart.*
quis (m.), **quid** (n.), *who? what?*

VOCABULARY 38. RECAP. VOC. 25.

făcĭlis, -e, *easy.*
difficĭlis, -e, *difficult.*
mĕmŏria, -ae (f.), *memory.*
Eurōpa, -ae (f.), *Europe.*
ămor, -ōris (m.), *love.*
pătientia, -ae (f.), *patience.*
fortūna, -ae (f.), *fortune.*
ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris (n.), *journey.*
hăbēbat, (he, she, it) *had.*
hăbēbant, (they) *had.*

VOCABULARY 39.

factum, -i (n.), *deed.*
vădum, -i (n.), *ford.*
nŭmĕrus, -i (m.), *number.*
pars, -tis (f.), *part.*
pĭus, -a, -um, *dutiful.*
bĕnĕvŏlus, -a, -um, *benevolent.*

VOCABULARY 40.

audācia, -ae (f.), *boldness.*
săpientia, -ae (f.), *wisdom.*
nŭmĕrus, -i (m.), *number.*
iūmentum, -i (n.), *baggage animal.*
pernĭcĭēs, -ei (f.), *destruction.*
duxit, (he, she, it) *led.*

VOCABULARY 41.

quis? *who? which?* (pronoun)
nēmo,[2] *no one.*
pătria, -ae (f.), *native land, fatherland.*
nōtus, -a, -um, *known.*
grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing.*
ămor, -ōris (m.), *love.*
mĕmor, mĕmŏr-is, *mindful* (declined like dives, p. 39).
ĭs, ĕă, ĭd, *that,* plur. *those.*

VOCABULARY 45.

laudo, 1, *I praise.*
culpo, 1, *I blame.*
vulnĕro, 1, *I wound.*
vasto, 1, *I lay waste.*
do, 1, *I give.*
ăro, 1, *I plough.*
dēlecto, 1, *I delight.*
orno, 1, *I adorn.*

NOTE.—The figure 1 placed after a verb means that the word belongs to the first conjugation. For *do* see § 56, p. 63.

---

[1] Be careful to accent this word on ŏ thus, *Rhŏdănus.* See App. I., § 7 (*c*), p. 121.

[2] See Vocabulary 54, note, p. 139.

VOCABULARY 46.

monstro, 1, *I point out.*	**sŭpĕro**, *I overcome.*
intro, 1, *I enter.*	**pugno**, 1, *I fight.*
lŏcus, -i (m.), *place.*	**vestis**, -is (f.), *garment.*
fīnis, -is (m.), *end, boundary.*	**dilĭgens**, -ntis, *diligent.*
fīnes, -ium (m. plur.), *territories.*	**crās** (adv.), *to-morrow.*

NOTE.—The plural of **lŏcus**, *a place*, is neuter, **lŏcă**, **-ōrum**, when it means geographical places. The plural *lŏci* means passages in a book.

VOCABULARY 47.

porto, 1, *I carry.*	**convŏco**, 1, *I call together.*
regno, 1, *I reign.*	**hăbĭto**, 1, *I dwell, live.*
vīto, 1, *I avoid.*	**păro**, 1, *I prepare.*
cervus, -i, *stag.*	**crūs, crūris** (n.), *leg.*
strēnuē, *vigorously.*	**iam** (adv.), *already.*
bĕnĕ, *well.*	**quod** (conj.), *because.*

do, dăre, dĕd-i, dătum, *to give.*

VOCABULARIES 48 AND 49.

festīno, 1, *I hasten.*	**victōria**, -ae (f.), *victory.*
lībĕro, 1, *I set free, I deliver.*	**praeda**, -ae (f.), *booty.*
nuntĭo, 1, *I announce.*	**stătŭa**, -ae (f.), *statue.*
vŏco, 1, *I call.*	**mātĕrĭa**, -ae (f.), *timber.*
convŏco, 1, *I call together.*	**dŏmus**, -ūs (f.), *house.*
rĕvŏco, 1, *I recall.*	**lēgātus**, -i (m.), *ambassador.*
aedīfĭco, 1, *I build.*	**contrā** (prep. gov. acc.), *against.*

NOTES.—(1) *Mātĕria* is also spelled *mātĕries*, fifth declension.

(2) *Dŏmus* is irregular and is thus declined:—

Sing. dŏmus, dŏmum, dŏmūs, dŏmui, dŏmo.
Plur. dŏmūs, dŏmūs, dŏmuum, dŏmĭbus, dŏmĭbus.

VOCABULARY 50.

ambŭlo, 1, *I walk.*	**virgo**, -ĭnis (f.), *maiden.*
explōrātor, -ōris (m.), *spy.*	**ignāvus**, -a, -um, *slothful.*
părens, -ntis (c.), *parent.*	**improbus**, -a, -um, *wicked.*

VOCABULARY 51.

hăbeo, hăbēre, hăbu-i, hăbĭtum, *to have.*
dēbeo, dēbēre, dēbu-i, dēbĭtum, *to owe.*
praebeo, praebēre, praebu-i, praebĭtum, *to set, to offer.*

tĭmeo, tĭmēre, tĭmu-i (no supine), *to fear.*
terreo, terrēre, terru-i, terrĭtum, *to frighten.*
cŏercĕo, cŏercēre, cŏercu-i, cŏercĭtum, *to restrain.*
dŏceo, dŏcēre, dŏcu-i, dŏctum, *to teach.*

auxĭlium, **-i** (n.), *help.*
bĕnĕfĭcium, **-i** (n.), *benefit.*
īra, **-ae** (f.), *anger.*
ăsĭnus, **-i** (m.), *ass.*
tŏlĕro, 1, *to bear.*
pellis, **-is** (f.), *skin.*
ĭbi (adv.), *there.*
vix (adv.), *scarcely.*

VOCABULARY 52.

tĕneo, tĕnēre, tĕnu-i, tentum, *to hold, to keep.*
dēleo, dēlēre, dēlēv-i, dēlētum, *to destroy.*
compleo, complēre, complēv-i, complētum, *to fill.*
fleo, flēre, flēv-i, flētum, *to weep.*
mŏveo, mŏvēre, mōv-i, mōtum, *to move.*

praesĭdĭum, **-i** (n.), *garrison, guard.*
firmus, **-a**, **-um**, *strong.*
dĕcĭmus, **-a**, **-um**, *tenth.*
Troia, **-ae** (f.), *Troy.*
fossa, **-ae** (f.), *ditch.*
lăpis, **-ĭdis** (m.), *stone.*
Graecus, **-i** (m.), *Greek.*
foedus, **-ĕris** (n.), *treaty.*

VOCABULARY 54.

plăceo, **-ēre**, **-ui**, **-ĭtum**, *to please.*
displĭceo, 2,[1] *to displease*
mīlĭtĭa, **-ae** (f.), *military affairs, war.*
summus, **-a**, **-um**, *highest.*
sŭprēmus, **-a**, **-um**, *supreme, highest.*
nēmo, *no one.*
pāreo, 2, *to obey.*
nŏceo, 2, *to injure.*
sălus, **-ūtis** (f.), *safety.*
iūs, **iūris** (n.), *law, right, power.*
părens, **-entis** (c.), *parent.*

NOTE.—*Nēmo* (from *ne homo, i.e.*, not a man) is thus declined:—
Nom. **Nēmo**, acc. **nēmĭnem**, gen. **nullīus**, dat. **nēmĭni**, abl. **nullō**.
This is sometimes put in a rhyme:—

From **nēmo** let me never say
Nēmĭnis and nēmĭnĕ.

VOCABULARY 55.

dīco, **dīcĕre**, **dix-i**, **dictum**, *to say, to speak.*
dūco, **dūcĕre**, **dux-i**, **ductum**, *to lead.*
tĕgo, **tĕgĕre**, **tex-i**, **tectum**, *to cover.*

---

[1] Verbs with the number 2 are exactly like *moneo* in their principal parts.

lĕgo, lĕgĕre, lēg-i, lectum, *to read.*
scrībo, scrībĕre, scrips-i, scriptum, *to write.*
mitto, mittĕre, mīs-i, missum, *to send.*

pallium, -i (n.), *cloak.*
ŏs,[1] **ossis** (n.), *bone.*
nŏvus, -a, -um, *new.*
paucus, -a, -um, *few.*

VOCABULARY 56.

ĕmo, ĕmĕre, ēm-i, emptum, *to buy.*
vinco, vincĕre, vīc-i, victum, *to conquer.*
claudo, claudĕre, claus-i, clausum, *to close.*
dēfendo, dēfendĕre, dēfend-i, dēfensum, *to defend.*
dēscendo, dēscendĕre, dēscend-i, descensum, *to descend.*
contendo, contendĕre, contend-i, contentum, *to hasten, to contend.*

cōpia, -ae (f.), *plenty, quantity.*
cōpiae, -arum, *forces* (soldiers).
ĭter, itĭnĕris (n.), *journey, way.*
ad (prep. gov. acc.), *to.*

VOCABULARY 57.

gĕro, gĕrĕre, gess-i, gestum, *to wage, to carry on.*
pōno, pōnĕre, pŏsŭ-i, pŏsĭtum, *to place.*
instruo, instruĕre, instrux-i, instructum, *to draw up.*
disco, discĕre, dĭdĭc-i, *to learn.*

praesĭdium, -i (n.), *guard.*
pons, pontis (m.), *bridge.*
cĭtĕrior,[2] *hither.*
ăciēs, -iei (f.), *line of battle.*
ĭbi (adv.), *there.*
cum (prep. gov. abl.), *with.*

VOCABULARY 58.

custōdio, 4, *to guard.*
ērŭdio, 4, *to train.*
fīnio, 4, *to end.*
mūnio, 4, *to fortify.*
pūnio, 4, *to punish.*
cūra, -ae (f.), *care.*
scĕlus, -ĕris (n.), *crime.*
vĭtium, -i (n.), *vice.*
vallum, -i (n.), *rampart.*
ōrātio, -ōnis (f.), *speech.*

---

[1] The genitive plural of *ŏs* is **ossium.**

[2] In Roman times there were two districts called Gallia, *viz.*, **Gallia ulterior,** *Further Gaul* (Modern France), and **Gallia citerior,** *Hither Gaul,* in the north of Italy. For *ulterior* see p. 52; *citerior* comes from a preposition *citra,* meaning *on this side.* Thus Gallia citerior meant the Gaul *on this side, i.e.,* on the Roman side, of the Alps.

nūtrio, 4, *to nourish.*
mălĕ (adv.), *badly.*
mors, -tis (f.), *death.*
imprŏbus, -a, -um, *wicked.*

VOCABULARY 59.

vĕnio, vĕnīre, vēn-i, ventum, *to come.*
per-vĕnio, -vĕnīre, -vēni, -ventum, *to arrive.*
con-vĕnio, -vĕnīre, -vēni, -ventum, *to come together, to assemble.*
vincio, vincīre, vinx-i, vinctum, *to bind.*
sĕpĕlio, sĕpĕlīre, sĕpĕlīv-i, sĕpultum, *to bury.*
stătim (adv.), *immediately.*
antĕ (prep. gov. acc.), *before.*
post (prep. gov. acc.), *after.*
mens, -tis (f.), *mind.*
cătēna, -ae (f.), *chain.*
lăbōro, 1, *to work.*
occīsus, -a, -um, *slain.*
făcĭlĕ (adv.), *easily.*

VOCABULARY 60.

stătŭo, stătŭĕre, stătŭ-ī, stătūtum, *to decide.*

VOCABULARY 61.

persuādeo, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, *to persuade.*
mĕdĭcus, -i (m.), *doctor.*
sāno, 1, *to heal.*

VOCABULARY 63.

vĭdeo, vĭdēre, vīd-i, vīsum, 2, *to see.*
rĕlinquo, rĕlinquĕre, rĕlīqui, rĕlictum, 3, *to leave.*
sto, stāre, stĕt-i, stātum, *to stand.*
Carthāgo, -ĭnis (f.), *Carthage.*
narro, 1, *to relate.*
ligneus, -a, -um, *wooden.*
cūro, 1, *to take care of.*

VOCABULARIES 64 AND 65.

ōlīm, *formerly, once.*
nunquam, *never.*
mox, *soon.*
hŏdiē, *to-day, now.*
laetus, -a, -um, *glad, joyful.*
cantus, -ūs (m.), *song.*
contentus, -a, -um, *contented.*
ăcūtus, -a, -um, *sharp.*
infēlix, -īcis, *unhappy.*
dilĭgens, -entis, *diligent.*

VOCABULARY 66. RECAP. VOCS. 45 50.

cottīdiē[1] (adv.), *daily.*
mox (adv.), *soon.*
ad (prep. with acc.), *to.*
cōpiae (f. plur.), see Vocabulary 56

[1] Also spelled **cŏtīdiē** and **quŏtīdiē**.

VOCABULARIES 71 AND 72.

mŏneo, 2, *I advise.*
admŏneo, 2, *I warn.*
exerceo, 2, *I exercise.*
ligněus, -a, -um, *wooden*
Trōia, -ae (f.), *Troy.*
Trōiānus, -i, *Trojan.*
armātus, *armed.*
classis, -is (f.), *fleet.*
lăcrĭma, -ae, *tear, weeping.*
Cāto, -ōnis, *Cato.*
crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*
crūdēlĭtas, -ātis (f.), *cruelty.*
tempestas, -ātis (f.), *tempest.*
sŭbĭtus, -a, -um, *sudden.*
mīnae, -arum (f.), *threats.*

VOCABULARY 74.

opprĭmo, -ĕre, -pressi, -pressum, *to overpower*

VOCABULARY 76.

impĕdio, 4, *to hinder.*
occīdo, -ĕre, -īdi, īsum, *to slay.*
căpio,[1] **căpĕre**, **cēpi**, **captum**, *to take.*
grăvis, -e, *heavy.*
aegrē (adv.), *with difficulty.*
ŏbēdio, 4 (gov. dative), *to obey.*

[1] The conjugation of this verb will be explained later. The only parts used in the exercise follow the usual rules.

GENERAL VOCABULARIES.

I. LATIN-ENGLISH.

ā, ab, *by* (R. 13).
absens, -ntis, *absent.*
ācer, -cris, -crĕ, *keen.*
ăciēs, -ei (f.), *line of battle.*
ăcus, -ūs (f.), *needle.*
ăcūtus, -a, -um, *sharp.*
ad (prep. with acc.), *to.*
admŏneo, 2, *I warn.*
adventus, -ūs (m.), *arrival.*
adversus, -a, -um, *adverse.*
aedĭfĭco, 1, *I build.*
aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick.*
aegrē, *with difficulty.*
aestās, -ātis (f.), *summer.*
aetās, -ātis (f.), *age.*
Āfrĭca, -ae (f.), *Africa.*
ăger, -gri (m.), *field.*
agnus, -i (m.), *lamb.*
agrĭcŏla, -ae (m.), *farmer.*
āla, -ae (f.), *wing.*
ălăcer, -cris, -cre, *brisk.*
albus, -a, -um, *white.*
Alpēs, -ium (f. plur.), *the Alps.*
altus, -a, -um, *high, deep.*
ămăt, *he loves.*
ambŭlo, 1, *I walk.*
ămīcus, -i (m.), *friend.*
ămo, 1, *I love.*
ămor, -ōris (m.), *love.*
ănĭmăl, -is (n.), *animal.*
ănĭmus, -i (m.), *mind, courage.*
annus, -i (m.), *year.*
anser, -ĕris (m.), *goose.*
antĕ (prep. with acc.), *before.*
antīquus, -a, -um, *old ancient.*
ăper, -pri (m.), *wild boar.*
ăqua, -ae (f.), *water.*
ăquīla, -ae (f.), *eagle.*
arbor, -ŏris (f.), *tree.*
arcus, -ūs (m.), *bow.*

argentum, -i (n.), *silver.*
arma, -ōrum (n. plur.), *arms.*
ārmātus, -a, -um, *armed.*
ăro, 1, *I plough.*
arx, arcis (f.), *citadel,* § 29 (2)
āsĭnus, -i (m.), *ass.*
asper, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *rough.*
audācia, -ae (f.), *boldness.*
audax, -ācis, *bold.*
audio, 4, I *hear.*
auris, -is (f.), *ear.*
aurum, -i (n.), *gold.*
auxĭlium, -i (n.), *help.*
ăvīdus, -a, -um, *greedy.*
ăvis, -is (f.), *bird.*

Belgă, -ae (m.), *a Belgian.*
bellum, -i (n.), *war.*
bĕnĕ (adv.), *well.*
bĕnĕfĭcium, -i (n.), *benefit.*
bĕnĕvŏlus, -a, -um, *benevolent.*
bŏnus, -a, -um, *good.*
brĕvis, -e, *short.* **brĕvior, -ius,** *shorter*
Brĭtannia, -ae (f.), *Britain.*

calcar, -āris (n.), *spur.*
campus, -i (m.), *a plain.*
cănis, -is (c.), *dog.*
cantus, -ūs (m.), *song.*
căpio, -ĕre, cēpi, captum, 3, *I take.*
captīvus, -i (m.), *captive.*
căpŭt, -ĭtis (n.), *head.*
carmen, -ĭnis (n.), *song.*
carrus, -i (m.), *cart.*
Carthāgo, -ĭnis (f.), *Carthage.*
cārus, -a, -um, *dear.*
căsa, -ae (f.), *cottage.*
castra, -ōrum (n. plur.), *camp.*
cătēna, -ae (f.), *chain.*
Cāto, -ōnis, *Cato.*

causa, -ae (f.), *cause.*
cĕler, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĕ, *swift.*
cĕlĕrĭtas, -ātis (f.), *speed.*
cervus, -i (m.), *stag.*
cĭbus, -i (m.), *food.*
cĭtĕrĭor, -ĭŭs, *hither.*
cīvis, -is (c.), *citizen.*
cīvĭtas, -ātis (f.), *state.*
clam (adv.), *secretly.*
clāmor, -ōris (m.), *shout.*
clārus, -a, -um, *famous.*
classis, -is (f.), *fleet.*
Claudius, -i, *a man's name.*
claudo, -ĕre, clausi, clausum, 3, *I close.*
cŏerceo, 2, *I restrain.*
cŏlor, -ōris (m.), *colour.*
cŏlumba, -ae (f.), *dove.*
cŏmĕs, -ĭtis (c.), *companion.*
compleo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, *I fill.*
complĕt (-ĕnt), *fills* (*fill*).
consĭlium, -i (n.), *plan.*
conspectus, -ūs, (m.), *sight, view.*
constantia, -ae (f.), *constancy.*
consŭl, -ŭlis (m.), *consul.*
contendo, -ĕre, -di, -ntum, *I hasten, I contend.*
contentus, -a, -um, *contented.*
contrā (prep. with acc.), *against.*
convĕnio, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *I come together, I assemble* (intrans.).
convŏco, 1, *I call together.*
cōpia, -ae (f.), *plenty, quantity.*
cōpiae, -ārum (f. plur.), *forces.*
cornū, -ūs (n.), *horn, wing of an army.*
cŏrōna, -ae (f.), *crown.*
corpus, -ŏris (n.), *body.*
cottīdiē, *daily.*
cras (adv.), *to-morrow.*
crūdēlis, -e, *cruel.*
crūdēlĭtas, -ātis (f.), *cruelty.*
crūs, crūris (n.), *leg.*
culpo, 1, *I blame.*
culter, -tri (m.), *knife.*
cum (prep with abl.), *with* (meaning accompaniment).
cum, *when* (R. 61).
cūr, *why.*
cūra, -ae (f.), *care.*
cūro, 1, *I take care of* (gov. acc.).
currĭt, *runs.* **currunt**, *they run.*
currus, -ūs (m.), *chariot.*
custodio, 4, *I guard.*
custos, -ōdis (m.), *guardian.*

dĕa, -ae (f.), *goddess* (§ 1, p. 122).
dēbeo, 2, *I owe, I ought.*
dĕcĭmus, -a, -um, *tenth.*
dēfendo, -ĕre, -di, -nsum, 3, *I defend.*
dēlectăt, *he delights.*
dēlecto, 1, *I delight.*
dēleo, -ēre, -ēvi -ētum, 2, *I destroy.*
dens, -ntis (m.), *tooth.*
densus, -a, -um, *dense.*
descendo, -ĕre, -di, -nsum, 3, *I descend.*
deus, -i (m.), *god* (p. 122, § 2 (*c*)).
dexter, -tra, -trum, *right* (adj.).
Diāna, -ae (f.), *Diana.*
dīco, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I say, I speak*
diēs, -ei (m.), *day.*
difficĭlis, -e, *difficult.*
dilĭgens, -ntis, *diligent.*
disco, -ĕre, dĭdĭci, 3, *I learn.*
displĭceo, 2, *I displease* (gov. dat.).
dīves, dīvĭtis, *rich.*
do, dăre, dĕdi, dătum, *I give.*
dŏceo, -ēre, -ui, -ctum, 2, *I teach.*
dolor, -ōris (m.), *grief.*
dŏmĭnus, -i (m.), *lord.*
dŏmus, -ūs (f.), *house.*
dōnum, -i (n.), *gift.*
dūcit (-unt), *leads* (*lead*).
dūco, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, *I lead.*
dulcis, -e, *sweet.* **dulcior**, -ius, *sweeter.*
dum, *while.*
dūrus, -a, -um, *hard.*
dux, dŭcis (m.), *leader.*
duxit, *he led.*

ĕgo (§ 48).
ei (§ 48). **ēius** (R. 26 (*b*)).
ĕmo, -ĕre, ēmi, emptum, 3, *I buy.*
ĕpistŏla, -ae (f.), *letter.*
ĕques, -ĭtis (m.), *horse soldier.*
ĕquester, -ris, -rĕ, *equestrian.*
ĕquĭtātus, -ūs (m.), *cavalry.*
ĕquus, -i (m.), *horse.*
ĕrăt, *he was.*
ērŭdio, 4, *I train.*
est, *is.*
et, *and.*

Eurōpa, -ae (f.), *Europe.*
exemplum, -i (n.), *example.*
exerceo, 2, *I exercise.*
exercītus, -ūs (m.), *army.*
explorātor, -ōris (m.), *spy.*
extĕrior, *outer.* extrēmus, *outermost.*

făber, -bri (m.), *workman.*
făcies, -ei (f.), *face.*
făcĭlĕ (adv.), *easily.*
fácĭlis, -e, *easy.*
făcĭt (-iunt), *makes* (*make*).
factum, -i (n.), *deed.*
falsus, -a, -um, *false.*
fēlix, -īcis, *happy.*
fēmĭna, -ae (f.), *woman.*
fĕrox, -ōcis, *fierce.*
ferrum, -i (n.), *iron.*
fertĭlior, -ius, *more fertile.*
fertĭlis, -e, *fertile.*
fĕrus, -a, -um, *wild.*
festīno, 1, *I hasten.*
fĭdēlis, -e, *faithful.*
fīlia, -ae (f.), *daughter.*
fīlius, -i (m.), *son.*
fīnes, -ium (m. plur.), *territories.*
fīnio, 4, *I end.*
fīnis, -i (m.), *end, boundary.*
firmus, -a, -um, *strong.*
fleo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, 2, *I weep.*
flōs, -ōris (m.), *flower.*
flūmen, -ĭnis (n.), *river.*
flŭvius, -i (m.), *river.*
foedus, -ĕris (n.), *treaty.*
fortis, -ĕ, *brave.* fortior, -ius, *braver.*
fortūna, -ae (f.), *fortune.*
fossa, -ae (f.), *ditch.*
frāter, -tris (m.), *brother.*
frīgĭdus, -a, -um, *cold* (adj.).
frīgus, -ŏris (n.), *cold.*
fructus, -ūs (m.), *fruit.*
frūmentum, -i (n.), *corn.*
fŭga, -ae (f.), *flight.*
fulmen, -ĭnis (n.), *lightning.*

Gallia, -ae (f.), *Gaul.*
Gallus, -a, -um, *a Gaul.*
gĕner, -ĕri (m.), *son-in-law.*
gĕnu, -ūs (n.), *knee.*
gĕnus, -ĕris (n.), *kind, sort.*
Germānia, -ae (f.), *Germany.*
gĕro, -ĕre, gessi, gestum, 3, *I wage, I carry on.*
glădius, -i (m.), *sword.*
grădus, -ūs (m.), *step.*
Graecus, -i (m.), *a Greek.*
grātus, -a, -um, *pleasing.*
grăvis, -e, *heavy.*
grex, grĕgis (m.), *flock.*

hăbēbat, *he had.*
hăbeo, 2, *I have.*
hăbĭto, 1, *I dwell.*
Hannĭba!, -ălis (m.), *Hannibal.*
hasta, -ae (f.), *spear.*
hiems, -ĕmis (f.), *winter.*
hĭstŏria, -ae (f.), *story.*
hŏdiē, *to-day, now.*
hŏmo, -ĭnis (m.), *man.*
hōra, -ae (f.), *hour.*
hortus, -i (m.), *garden.*
hostis, -is (m.), *enemy.*

iam (adv.), *already.*
ĭbi (adv.), *there.*
ignāvus, -a, -um, *slothful.*
ignis, -is (m.), *fire.*
ĭmāgo, -gĭnis (f.), *image.*
imber, -bris (m.), *shower.*
impĕdio, 4, *I hinder.*
impĕrātor, -ōris (m.), *general.*
impĕro, 1, *I give orders* (§ 66).
impĕtus, -ūs (m.), *attack.*
imprŏbus, -a, -um, *wicked.*
imprūdens, -entis, *imprudent.*
incŏla, -ae (f.), *inhabitant.*
infēlix, -īcis, *unhappy.*
infĕrior, *lower.* infīmus, *lowest.*
ĭnĭtium, -i (n.), *beginning.*
instruo, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I draw up.*
insŭla, -ae (f.), *island.*
intĕrior, *inner.*
intīmus, *inmost.*
intro, 1, *I enter.*
īra, -ae (f.), *anger.*
īrācundus, -a, -um, *angry.*
is, § 48.
Ītălia, -ae (f.), *Italy.*
ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris (n.), *journey.*
iūcundus, -a, -um, *pleasant.*
iūdex, -ĭcis (c.), *judge.*

iūmentum, -i (n.), *baggage animal.*
iūnior, *younger.*
iūs, -ūris (n.), *law, right.*
iustus, -a, -um, *just.*
iŭvĕnis, -is (m.) (§ 29), *young man.*

lăbor, -ōris (m.), *labour.*
lăbōro, 1, *I work.*
lăcrĭma, -ae, *tear, weeping.*
lăcus, -ūs (m.), *lake.*
laetĭtia, -ae (f.), *joy.*
laetus, -a, -um, *glad, joyful.*
lăpis, -ĭdis (m.), *stone.*
lātus, -a, -um, *broad, wide.*
laudo, 1, *I praise.*
laus, laudis (f.), *praise.*
lēgātus, -i (m.), *ambassador.*
lēgio, -ōnis (f.), *legion.*
lĕgo, -ĕre, lēgi, lectum, 3, *I read.*
lĕo, -ōnis (m.), *lion.*
lĕvis, -ĕ, *light, unimportant.*
lex, lēgis (f.), *law.*
liber, -bri (m.), *book.*
liber, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *free.*
lĭbĕri, -orum (m. plur.), *children.*
lĭbĕro, 1, *I set free, I deliver.*
ligneus, -a, -um, *wooden.*
lĭtus, -ŏris (n.), *shore.*
lŏcus, -i (m.), *place*
longus, -a, -um, *long.*
lūna, -ae (f.), *moon.*
lŭpus, -i (m), *wolf.*
lux, lūcis (f.), *light.*

măcer, -ra, -rum, *thin.*
măgis (adv.), *more.*
măgister, -tri (m.), *master.*
magnus, -a, -um, *great.*
maĭor, -ius, *greater.*
mălĕ (adv.), *badly.*
mălum, -i (n.), *evil.*
mănus, -ūs (f.), *hand.*
măre, -is (n.), *sea.*
măter, -tris (f.), *mother.*
mātĕrĭa, -ae (f.), *timber.*
maxĭmē (adv.), *most.*
maxĭmus, -a, -um, *greatest.*
mĕdĭcus -i, *doctor.*
mĕlior, -ius. *better.*
mĕmor, -ŏris, *mindful.*
mĕmŏrĭa. -ae (f.), *memory*
mens, -ntis (f.), *mind, intellect.*
mensa, -ae (f.), *table.*
mensis, -is (m.), *month.*
mĕtus, -ūs (m.), *fear.*
meus, *my* (§ 50).
mīlĕs, mīlĭtis (m.), *soldier.*
mīlĭtia, -ae (f.), *military affairs.*
mĭnae, -arum (f.), *threats.*
mĭnĭmus, -a, -um, *least.*
mĭnister, -ri (m.), *servant.*
mĭnor, -us, *less.*
mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful.*
mĭser, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *wretched.*
mitto, -ĕre, mīsi, missum, 3, *I send*
mittunt, *they send.*
mŏlestus, -a, -um, *troublesome.*
mŏneo, 2, *I advise.*
mons, -ntis (m.), *mountain.*
monstrăt, *he points out.*
monstro, 1, *I point out.*
mors, -rtis (f.), *death.*
mortuus, -a, -um, *dead.*
mŏveo, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum, 2, *I move.*
mox (adv.), *soon.*
mŭli-er, -ĕris (f.), *woman.*
multus, -a, -um, *much, many.*
mūnio, 4, *I fortify.*
mūrus, -i (m.), *wall.*

narro, 1, *I relate.*
nātū (§ 45 (2)).
nauta, -ae (m.), *sailor.*
nāvis, -is (f.), *ship.*
nē, § 57.
nĕcessārius, -a, -um, *necessary.*
nēmo, *no one* (see Voc. 54, p. 139)
Neptūnus, -i (m.), *Neptune.*
nĭger, -gra, -grum, *black.*
nix, nĭvis (f.), *snow.*
nŏceo, 2, *I injure* (gov. dat.).
nōmen, -ĭnis (n.), *name.*
nōn, *not.*
nonnullus, -a, -um, *some.*
noster, -tra, -trum, *our.*
nostri, nostrum (R. 24).
nōtus, -a, -um, *known.*
nŏvus, -a, -um, *new.*
nox, noctis (f.) [gen. plur., -ium], *night.*
nūbēs, -is (f.), *cloud.*

nŭmĕrus, -i (m.), *number.*
nunc (adv.), *now.*
nunquam, *never.*
nuntio, 1, *I announce.*
nuntius, -i (m.), *messenger.*
nūtrio, *I nourish.*
nux, nŭcis (f.), *nut.*

ŏbēdio, 4, *I obey* (gov. dat.).
obses, obsĭdis (c.), *hostage.*
occīdo, -ĕre, -īdi, -īsum, 3, *I slay.*
occīsus, -a, -um, *slain.*
ŏdor, -ōris (m.), *smell.*
ōlīm, *formerly.*
omnis, -e, *all.*
oppĭdum, -i (n.), *town.*
opprĭmo, -ĕre, -pressi, -pressum, 3, *I overpower.*
optĭmus, -a, -um, *best.*
ŏpus, -ĕris (n.), *work.*
ōrātio, -ōnis (f.), *speech.*
ornăt, *he adorns.*
orno, 1, *I adorn.*
ōro, 1, *I beg.*
ŏs, ossis (n.), *bone.*

pallium, -i (n.), *cloak.*
părăt, *prepares.*
părens, -ntis (c.), *parent.*
pāreo, 2, *I obey* (gov. dat.)
păro, 1, *I prepare.*
pars, -tis (f.), *part.*
parvus, -a, -um, *small.*
păter, -tris (m.), *father.*
pătientia, -ae (f.), *patience.*
pātria, -ae (f.), *fatherland.*
paucus, -a, -um, *few.*
pauper, -ĕris, *poor.*
pax, -ācis (f.), *peace.*
pĕcūnia, -ae (f.), *money.*
pĕdĕs, -ĭtis (m.), *foot soldier.*
pĕdester, -tris, -re, *pedestrian*
pēior, -ius, *worse.*
pĕlăgus, -i (n.), *sea.*
pellis, -is (f.), *skin.*
pĕrīcŭlum, -i (n.), *danger.*
pernĭciēs, -ei (f.), *destruction.*
pernĭciōsus, -a, -um, *destructive.*
persuādeo, -ēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, 2, *I persuade* (gov. dative).
pervĕnio, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, 4, *I arrive.*
pēs, pĕdis (m.), *foot.*
pessĭmus, -a, -um, *worst.*
piscātor, -ōris (m.), *fisherman*
piscis, -is (m.), *fish.*
pius, -a, -um, *dutiful.*
plăceo, 2, *I please* (gov. dat.)
plānĭtiēs, -ei (f.), *plain.*
plūrĭmi, *most, very many.*
plūrĭmum (see R. 22, p. 53).
plūs (see § 43 (2)).
pŏēta, -ae (m.), *poet.*
pōno, -ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3, *I place.*
pons, -ntis (m.), *bridge.*
porta, -ae (f.), *gate.*
porto, 1, *I carry.*
portus, -ūs (m.), *harbour.*
post (prep. with acc.), *after.*
postĕrior, *later.* postrēmus, *last.*
pŏtens, -ntis, *powerful.*
pŏtentior, -ius, *more powerful*
praebeo, 2, *I set, I offer.*
praeda, -ae (f.), *booty.*
praemium, -i (n.), *reward.*
praesens, -ntis, *present* (adj.).
praesĭdium, -i (n.), *garrison, guard.*
prīmus, -a, -um, *first.*
princeps, -ĭpis (m.), *chief.*
prĭor, *former.*
proelium, -i (n.), *battle.*
prŏpior, *nearer.*
prosper, -ĕra, -ĕrum, *prosperous*
proxĭmus, *nearest, next.*
prūdens, -ntis, *prudent.*
pūblĭcus, -a, -um, *public.*
puella, -ae (f.), *girl.*
puer, -ĕri (m.), *boy.*
pugna, -ae (f.), *fight.*
pugnăt, *he fights.*
pugno, 1, *I fight.*
pulcher, -ra, -rum, *beautiful.*
pūnio, 4, *I punish.*

quam, *than* (conj.).
quercus, -ūs (f.), *oak.*
quid? (n.), *what?*
quis? (m.), *who?*
quod (conj.), *because.*

rēgīna, -ae (f.), *queen.*
rĕgio, -ōnis (f.), *region.*
regno, 1, *I reign.*

regnum, -i (n.), *kingdom.*
rĕgo, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I rule.*
rĕlinquo, -ĕre, -līqui, -lictum, 3, *I leave.*
rēs, -ei (f.), *thing.*
rēs adversae (f. plur.), *adversity.*
rēs pūblĭca (f.), *the state.*
rēs sĕcundae (f. plur.), *prosperity.*
rētĕ, -is (n.), *net.*
rĕvŏco, 1, *I recall.*
rex, rēgis (m.), *king.*
Rhēnus, -i, *the Rhine.*
Rhŏdănus, -i (m.), *the Rhône.*
rīpa, -ae (f.), *bank* (of a river).
rŏgo, 1, *I ask.*
Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman.*
rŏsa, -ae (f.), *rose.*
rŭber, -bra, -brum, *red.*

săcer, -cra, -crum, *sacred.*
saepĕ, *often.*
săgitta, -ae (f.), *arrow.*
sălŭber, -brĭs, -brĕ, *healthy.*
sălus, -ūtis (f.), *safety.*
sāno, 1, *I heal.*
săpiens, -ntis, *wise.*
săpientia, -ae (f.), *wisdom.*
scĕlus, -ĕris (n.), *crime.*
Scīpio, -ōnis (m.), *Scipio.*
scrībo, -ĕre, -psi, -ptum, *I write*
scūtum, -i (n.), *shield.*
sē (§ 48).
sĕcundus, -a, -um, *favourable.*
semper, *always.*
sĕnex, sĕnis (m.), *old man.*
sĕnior, *older.*
sĕpĕlio, -īre, -īvi, sepultum, 4, *I bury.*
servus, -i (m.), *slave.*
si, *if* (R. 40).
sīdus, -ĕris (n.), *constellation.*
signĭfer, -ĕri (m.), *standard-bearer.*
silva, -ae (f.), *wood*
sĭnister, -tra, -trum, *left* (adj.).
sŏcer, -ĕri (m.), *father-in-law.*
sŏcĭus, -i (m.), *ally.*
sōl, sōlis (m.), *sun.*
sŏlum, -i (n.), *soil.*
sŏror, -ōris (f.), *sister.*
spēs, -ei (f.), *hope.*
spīna, -ae (f.), *thorn.*
stătim, (adv.), *immediately.*
stătŭa, -ae (f.), *statue.*
stătuo, -ĕre, stătui, stătūtum, 3, *I decide.*
stella, -ae (f.), *star.*
sto, -āre, stĕti, stātum, *I stand.*
strēnuē, *vigorously.*
stultus, -a, -um, *foolish.*
sŭbĭtus, -a, -um, *sudden.*
sum, esse, fui, *I am.*
summus, -a, -um, *highest.*
sunt, *they are.*
sŭpĕrat, *overcomes.*
sŭpĕrior, *upper.*
sŭpĕro, 1, *I overcome.*
supplex, -ĭcis, *suppliant.*
sŭprēmus, -a, -um, *highest, supreme.*
suus, *his, her, its, their* (R. 28).

taurus, -i (m.), *bull.*
tĕgo, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum, 3, *I cover.*
tēlum, -i (m.), *weapon, dart.*
tempestas, -ātis (f.), *tempest.*
templum, -i (n.), *temple.*
tempus, -ŏris (n.), *time.*
tĕneo, -ēre, -ui, -ntum, 2, *I hold, I keep.*
tĕner, -ĕra, -erum, *tender.*
terra, -ae (f.), *land, earth.*
terreo, 2, *I frighten.*
terrĕt, *he terrifies.*
terrētur, *he is terrified.*
testis, -is (m.), *witness.*
tĭmeo, 2 (no supine), *I fear.*
tĭmĕt, *he fears.*
tĭmĭdus, -a, -um, *timid.*
tŏlĕro, 1, *I bear.*
trabs, trăbis (f.), *beam.*
trans (prep. with acc.), *across.*
transĭtus, -ūs (m.), *crossing.*
tristis, -e, *sad.*
Trōia, -ae (f.), *Troy.*
Trōiānus, -i, *Trojan.*
tū (§ 23).
tunc, *then.*
turpis, -e, *disgraceful, base.*
turris (f.), *tower*
tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*
tŭus, -a, -um, *thy.*

ultĕrior, *further.* ultĭmus, *last* (§ 44).
urbs, -is (f.), *city*
ut (§ 57).
ūtĭlior, -ius, *more useful.*
ūtĭlis, -e, *useful.*

vădum, -i (n.), *ford.*
vălĭdus, -a, -um, *strong.*
vallum, -i (n.), *rampart.*
vărĭus, -a, -um, *various.*
vasto, 1, *I lay waste.*
vectīgal, -ālis (n.), *tax.*
vēnātor, -ōris (m.), *hunter.*
vĕnio, -īre, vēni, ventum, 4, *I come.*
ventus, -i (m.), *wind.*
verbum, -i (n.), *word.*
vesper, -ĕris or **-ĕri** (m.), *evening.*
vester, -tra, -trum, *your.*
vestis, -is (f.), *garment.*
vĕtus (§ 35), *old.*
vĭa, -ae (f.), *way.*
victor, -ōris (m.), *victor.*
victōria, -ae (f.), *victory.*
vīcus, -i (m.), *village.*
vĭdeo, -ēre, vīdi, vīsum, 2, *I see.*
vincio, -īre, -nxi, -nctum, 4, *I bind.*
vinco, -ĕre, vīci, victum, 3, *I conquer.*
vīnum, -i (n.), *wine.*
vĭŏlens, -ntis, *violent.*
vīr, -i (m.), *man.*
vĭrgo, -ĭnis (f.), *virgin, maiden.*
vīta, -ae (f.), *life.*
vĭtium, -i (n.), *vice.*
vīto, 1, *I avoid.*
vīvĭt (-unt), *lives (live).*
vix (adv.), *scarcely.*
vŏco, 1, *I call.*
vox, -ōcis (f.), *voice.*
vulnĕrat, *he wounds.*
vulnĕro, 1, *I wound.*
vulnus, -ĕris (n.), *wound.*
vulpēs, -is (f.), *fox.*

II. ENGLISH-LATIN.

absent, *absens, -ntis.*
across, *trans* (with acc.).
adorn, I, *orno*, 1.
adorns, he, *ornăt.*
adverse, *adversus, -a, -um.*
adversity, *res adversae* (f. plur.).
advise, I, *mŏneo*, 2 (§ 66).
affairs, military, *mīlĭtĭa, -ae* (f.).
Africa, *Afrĭca, -ae* (f.).
after, *post* (with acc.).
against, *contrā* (gov. acc.).
age, *aetas, -ātis* (f.).
all, *omnis, -e.*
ally, *sŏcius, -i* (m.).
Alps, the, *Alpēs, -ĭum* (f. plur.).
already, *iam.*
always, *semper.*
am, I, *sum.*
ambassador, *lēgātus, -i* (m.).
ancient, *antīquus, -a, -um.*
and, *et.*
anger, *īra, -ae* (f.).
angry, *īrācundus, -a, -um.*
animal, *ănĭmal, -ālis* (n.).
announce, I, *nuntio*, 1.
are, *sunt.*
armed, *armātus, -a, -um.*
arms (weapons), *armă,-ōrum* (n. pl.).
army, *exercĭtus, -ūs* (m.).
arrival, *adventus, -ūs* (m.).
arrive, I, *pervenio, -īre, -vēni, -ventūm*, 4.
arrow, *săgitta, -ae* (f.).
ask, I, *rŏgo*, 1.
ass, *asĭnus, -i* (m.).
assemble, I, *convenio*, 4.
attack, *impĕtus, -ūs* (m.).
avoid, I, *vīto*, 1.

badly, *mălĕ.*
baggage-animal, *iūmentum, -i* (n.).
bank (river), *rīpa. -ae* (f.).
base, *turpis, -e.*
battle, *proelium, -i* (n.).
beach, *lĭt-us, -ōris* (n).
beam, *trabs, -ābis* (f.).
bear, I, *tŏlĕro*, 1.
beautiful, *pulcher, -chra, -chrum.*
because, *quod* (conj.).
before, *antĕ* (with acc.).
beg, I, *ōro*, 1.
beginning, *ĭnĭtium, -i* (n.).
Belgian, a, *Belga, -ae* (m.).
benefit, *bĕnĕfĭcium, -i* (n.).
benevolent, *bĕnĕvŏlus, -a, -um.*
best, *optĭmus.* better, *mĕlior.*
bind, I, *vincio, -īre, -nxi, -nctum.*
bird, *ăvis, -is* (f.).
black, *nĭger, -gra, -grum.*
blame, I, *culpo*, 1.
boar, wild, *āper, -pri* (m.).
body, *corpus, -ŏris* (n.).
bold, *audax, -ācis.*
boldness, *audācia, -ae* (f.).
bone, *ŏs, ossis* (n.).
book, *lĭber, -bri* (m.).
booty, *praeda, -ae* (f.).
bow, *arcus, -ūs* (m.).
boy, *puer, -ĕri* (m.).
brave, *fortis, -e.*
bravely, *fortĭter.*
bridge, *pons, -ntis* (m.).
Britain, *Brĭtannia, -ae* (f.).
broad, *lātus, -a, -um.*
brother, *frāter, -tris* (m.).
build, I, *aedĭfĭco*, 1.
bull, *taurus, -i* (m.).
bury, I, *sĕpĕlio, -īre, -īvi, sĕpultum*, 4.
buy, I, *ĕmo, -ĕre, ēmi, emptum*, 3.
by, *a* (R. 15); (in time), (R. 14).

Cæsar, *Cæsar, -ăris* (m.).
call, I, *vŏco*, 1. call back, *rĕvŏco.*
call together, I, *convŏco.*
camp, *castrā, -ōrum* (n. plur.).
captive, *captīvus, -i* (m.).
care, *cūra, -ae* (f.).
care, I take, *curo* 1.
carry, I, *porto*, 1.
carry on, I, *gero, -ĕre, gessi, gestum,*
cart, *carrus, -i* (m.).
Carthage, *Carthāgo, -ĭnis* (f.).
Cato, *Cāto, -ōnis* (m.).
cause, *causa, -ae* (f.).

cavalry, *ĕquĭtātus, -ūs* (m.).
chain, *cătēna, -ae* (f.).
chariot, *currus, -ūs* (m.).
chief, *princeps, -ĭpis* (m.).
children, *lĭbĕri, -ōrum* (m. plur.).
citadel, *arx, -cis* (f.).
citizen, *cīvis, -is* (c.).
city, *urbs, -is* (f.).
Claudius, *Claudius, -i* (m.).
cloak, *pallium, -i* (n.).
close, I, *claudo, -ĕre, clausi, clausum.*
cloud, *nūbēs, -is* (f.).
cold, *frīgus, -ŏris* (n.).
cold (adj.), *frīgĭdus, -a, -um.*
colour, *cŏlor, -ōris* (m.).
come, I, *vĕnio, -īre, vēni, ventum,* 4.
come together, I, *convĕnio,* 4.
commonwealth, *rēs pūblĭca* (f.).
companion, *cŏmes, -ĭtis* (c.).
conquer, I, *vinco, -ĕre, vīci, victum,* 3.
conqueror, *victor, -ōris* (m.).
constellation, *sīdus, -ĕris* (n.).
consul, *consul, -ŭlis* (m.).
contend, I, *contendo, -ĕre, -di, -tum,* 3.
contented, *contentus, -a, -um.*
corn, *frūmentum, -i* (n.).
cottage, *căsa, -ae* (f.).
cover, I, *tĕgo, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum,* 3.
crime, *scĕlus, -ĕris* (n.).
crossing, *transĭtus, -ūs* (m.).
crown, *cŏrōna, -ae* (f.).
cruel, *crūdēlis, -ĕ.*
cruelty, *crūdēlĭtas, -ātis* (f.).

daily, *cŏttīdĭē.*
danger, *pĕrīcŭlum, -i* (n.).
dart, *tēlum, -i* (n.).
daughter, *fīlia, -ae* (f.).
day, *dĭēs, -ei* (m.).
dead, *mortuus, -a, -um.*
dear, *cārus, -a, -um.*
death, *mors, -rtis* (f.).
decide, to, *stătuo, -ĕre, -ŭi, -ūtum,* 3.
deed, *factum, -i* (n.).
defend, I, *dēfendo, -ĕre, -di, -nsum,* 3.
delight, I, *dēlecto,* 1.
delights, he, *dēlectăt.*
deliver, I, *lĭbĕro.*
dense, *densus, -a, -um.*
descend, I, *descendo, -ĕre, -di, -nsum,* 3.
destroy, I, *dēleo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum,* 2.
destruction, *pernĭciēs, -ei* (f.).
destructive, *pernĭciōsus, -a, -um.*
Diana, *Diāna, -ae* (f.).
difficult, *difficĭlis, -e.*
difficulty, with, *aegrē.*
diligent, *dīlĭgens, -ntis.*
disgraceful, *turpis, -e.*
displease, *displĭceo,* 2 (gov. dat.).
ditch, *fossa, -ae* (f.).
doctor, *mĕdĭcus, -i* (m.).
dog, *cănis, -is* (c.), § 29.
dove, *cŏlumba, -ae* (f.).
draw up, to, *instruo, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum.*
dutiful, *pĭus, -a, -um.*
dwell, I, *hăbĭto,* 1.

eagle, *ăquĭla, -ae* (f.).
ear, *auris, -is* (f.).
earth, *terra, -ae* (f.).
easily, *făcĭlĕ.*
easy, *făcĭlis, -e.*
end, *fīnis, -is* (m.).
end, I, *fīnĭo,* 4.
enemy, *hostis, -is* (m.).
enter, I, *intro,* 1.
Europe, *Eurōpa, -ae* (f.).
evening, *vesper, -ĕris* or *-ĕri* (m.).
evil, *mălum, -i* (n.).
exercise, I, *exerceo,* 2.
example, *exemplum, -i* (n.)

face, *făciēs, -ei* (f.).
faithful, *fīdēlis, -e.*
false, *falsus, -a, -um.*
famous, *clārus, -a, -um.*
farmer, *agrĭcŏla, -ae* (m.).
father, *păter, -tris* (m.).
father-in-law, *sŏcer, -ĕri* (m.).
fatherland, *pătria, -ae* (f.).
favourable, *sĕcundus, -a, -um.*
fear, *mĕtus, -ūs* (m.).
fear, I, *tĭmeo, -ēre, -ui* (no supine).
fears, he, *tĭmĕt.*
fertile, *fertĭlis, -e.*
few, *paucus, -a, -um.*
field, *ăger, -gri* (m.).
fierce, *fĕrox, -ōcis.*
fight, a, *pugna, -ae* (f.).
fight, I, *pugno,* 1.
fights, he, *pugnăt.*

fill, I, *compleo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum*, 2.
fills, he, *complĕt*.
finish = end.
fire, *ignis, -is* (m.).
first, *prīmus, -a, -um*.
fish, *piscis, -is* (m.)
fisherman, *piscātor, -ōris* (m.).
flight, *fŭga, -ae* (f.).
flock, *grex, -ĕgis* (m.).
flower, *flōs, -ōris* (m.).
food, *cĭbus, -i* (m.).
foolish, *stultus, -a, -um*.
foot, *pēs, -pĕdis* (m.).
foot-soldier, *pĕdĕs, -ĭtis* (m.).
for. See R. 3 and 14 (*b*).
forces, *cōpiae* (f. plur.).
ford, *vădum, -i* (n.).
former, *prĭor*.
formerly, *ōlĭm*.
fortify, I, *mūnio*, 4.
fortune, *fortūna, -ae* (f.).
fox, *vulpēs, -is* (f.).
free, *lĭber, -ĕra, -ĕrum*.
friend, *ămīcus, -i* (m.).
frighten, I, *terreo*, 2.
fruit, *fructus, -ūs* (m.).
further, *ultĕrior*.

garden, *hortus, -i* (m.).
garment, *vestis, -is* (f.).
garrison, *praesĭdium, -i* (n.)
gate, *porta, ae* (f.).
Gaul, a, *Gallus, -i* (m.).
Gaul, *Gallia, -ae* (f.).
general, *impĕrātor, -ōris* (m.).
German, *Germānus, -a, -um*.
Germany, *Germānia, -ae* (f.).
gift, *dōnum, -i* (n.).
girl, *puella, -ae* (f.).
give, I, *do, dăre, dĕdi, dătum*.
gives, he, *dăt*.
glad, *laetus, -a, -um*.
god, *deus, -i* (m.).
goddess, *dea, -ae* (f.).
gold, *aurum, -i* (n.).
good, *bŏnus, -a, -um*.
goose, *anser, -ĕris* (m.).
great, *magnus, -a, -um*.
greater, *māior*.
greatest, *maxĭmus*.
greedy, *ăvĭdus, -a, -um*.
Greek, a, *Graecus, -i* (m.).
guard, *praesĭdium, -i* (n.).
guard, I, *custōdio*, 4.
guardian, *custos, -ōdis* (m.).

had, he (= possessed), *hăbēbăt;* as sign of pluperf. (§ 55).
hand, *mănus, -ūs* (f.).
Hannibal, *Hannĭbal, -ălis* (m.).
happy, *fēlix, -īcis*.
harbour, *portus, -ūs* (m.).
hard, *dūrus, -a, -um*.
has, he, *hăbĕt*.
hasten, I, *contendo, -ĕre, -di, -tum*, 3.
hasten, I, *festīno*, 1.
have, I, *hăbeo*, 2.
he, *is*.
head, *căput, -ĭtis* (n.).
heal, I, *sāno*, 1.
healthy, *sălūber, -bris, -brĕ*.
hear, I, *audio*, 4.
heat, *călor, -ōris* (m.).
heavy, *grăvis, -ĕ*.
help, *auxĭlium, -i* (n.).
her, *eam* (pro.) (R. 26), *suus* (adj.).
herself, *sē*.
high, *altus, -a, -um*.
highest, *summus, -a, -um*.
him, *eum*. himself, *sē*.
hinder, I, *impĕdio*, 4.
his, *suus, -a, -um* (R. 26).
hither (adj.), *cĭtĕrior*.
hold, I, *tĕneo, -ēre, -ui, -ntum*, 2.
honour, *hŏnor, -ōris* (m.).
hope, *spēs, -ei* (f.).
horn, *cornu, -ūs* (n.).
horse, *ĕquus, -i* (m.).
horseman, *ĕquĕs, equĭtis* (m.).
horse soldier, *ĕquĕs, -ĭtis* (m.).
hostage, *obses, obsĭdis* (m.).
hour, *hōra, -ae* (f.).
house, *dōmus, -ūs* (f.) (see Voc. 48, n. 2).
hunter, *vēnātor, -ōris* (m.).
husbandman, *agrĭcŏla, -ae* (m.).

I, *ĕgo*.
if, *si* (R. 40).
immediately, *stătim*.
imprudent, *imprūdens, -ntis*.
in, *in* (R. 7), see R. 14.
inhabitant, *incŏla, -ae* (m.).

injure, I, *nŏceo*, 2 (gov. dative).
inmost, *intĭmus*.
inner, *intĕrior*.
iron, *ferrum*, *-i* (n.)
is, *est*.
island, *insŭla*, *-ae* (f.).
Italy, *Itălĭa*, *-ae* (f.).
itself, *sē*.

journey, *ĭter*, *ĭtĭnĕris* (n.)
joy, *laetĭtia*, *-ae* (f.).
joyful, *laetus*, *-a*, *-um*.
judge, *iūdex*, *-ĭcis* (c.).
just, *iustus*, *-a*, *-um*.

keen, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācrĕ*.
keep, I, *tĕneo*, *ēre*, *-ui*, *-ntum*, 2.
kind, sort, *gĕnus*, *-ĕris* (n.).
kind (adj.), *bĕnignus*, *-a*, *-um*.
king, *rex*, *rēgis* (m.).
kingdom, *regnum*, *-i* (n.).
knee, *gĕnu*, *-ūs* (n.).
knife, *culter*, *-tri* (m.).
known, *nōtus*, *-a*, *-um*.

labour, *lăbor*, *-ōris* (m.).
lake, *lăcus*, *-ūs* (m.).
lamb, *agnus*, *-i* (m.).
land, *terra*, *-ae* (f.); *pătria*, *-ae* (f.), = *native land*.
large, *magnus*, *-a*, *-um*.
last, see § 44.
law, *lex*, *lēgis* (f.).
lay waste, I, *vasto*, 1.
lead, I, *dūco*, *-ĕre*, *-xi*, *-ctum*, 3.
lead, they, *dūcunt*.
leader, *dux*, *dŭcis* (m.).
leads, he, *dūcit*.
learn, I, *disco*, *-ĕre*, *dĭdĭci* (no supine), 3.
least, *mĭnĭmus*.
leave, I, *rĕlinquo*, *-ĕre*, *-līqui*, *-lictum*, 3.
led, he, *duxit*.
left, *sĭnister*, *-ra*, *-rum*.
leg, *crūs*, *-ūris* (n.).
legion, *lĕgio*, *-ōnis* (f.).
less, *mĭnor*.
lest, *nē*.
letter, *ĕpistŏla*, *-ae* (f.).
life, *vīta*, *-ae* (f.).
light, *lux*, *-ūcis* (f.).
light (adj.), *lĕvis*, *-ĕ*.
lightning, *fulmen*, *-ĭnis* (n.).
like = *love*.
line (of battle), *ăciēs*, *-ei* (f.).
lion, *leo*, *-ōnis* (m.).
little, *parvus*, *-a*, *-um*.
live, I, *hăbĭto*, 1.
lives, he, *vīvit*. live, they, *vīvunt*.
long, *longus*, *-a*, *-um*.
lord, *dŏmĭnus*, *-i* (m.).
love, *ămor*, *-ōris* (m.).
love, I, *ămo*, 1.
loves, he, *amat*.
lower, *infĕrior*.
lowest, *infĭmus*, *īmus*.

maiden, *virgo*, *-ĭnis* (f.).
make, they, *făcĭunt*.
makes, he, *făcĭt*.
man, *vĭr*, *vĭri* (m.). [(see R. 15).
man (human being), *homo*, *-ĭnis* (m.).
many, *multus*, *-a*, *-um*.
master, *dŏmĭnus*, *-i* (m.); *măgister*, *-tri* (m.) = teacher.
me, *mē*.
memory, *mĕmŏria*, *-ae* (f.).
messenger, *nuntius*, *-i* (m.).
mid-day, *mĕrīdiēs*, *-ei* (m.).
mind, *mens*, *-ntis* (f.).
mind, *ănĭmus*, *-i* (m.).
mindful, *mĕmor*, *-ŏris*.
money, *pĕcūnia*, *-ae* (f.).
month, *mensis*, *-is* (m.).
moon, *lūna*, *-ae* (f.).
more (1) (sign of comp. degree), R. 19; (2) (quantity), R. 22.
more (quantity), *plus* (R. 22).
more (degree), *măgis* (§ 47).
most (quantity) *plurĭmum*, *plurĭmi* (R. 22).
most (degree), *maxĭmē* (§ 47).
mother, *māter*, *-tris* (f.).
mountain, *mons*, *-ntis* (m.).
move, I, *mŏveo*, *-ēre*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, 2.
much, *multum* (R. 22).
my, *meus*, *-a*, *-um*.

name, *nōmen*, *-ĭnis* (n.).
nation, *gens*, *gentis* (f.).
native land, *pătria*, *-ae* (f.).
nearer, *prŏpior*.

nearest, *proxĭmus.*
necessary, *nĕcessārius, -a, -um.*
needle, *ăcus, -ūs* (f.).
Neptune, *Neptūnus, -i* (m.).
net, *rētĕ, -is* (n.).
never, *nunquam.*
new, *nŏvus, -a, -um*
next, *proxĭmus, -a, -um.*
night, *nox, -ctis* (f.).
noble, *nōbĭlis, -ĕ.*
noise, *clāmor, -ōris* (m.).
no one, *nēmo* (see voc. 54, p. 139).
not, *nōn.*
nourish, I, *nūtrio,* 4.
now, *nunc.*
number, *nŭmĕrus, -i* (m.).
nut, *nux, -ŭcis* (f.).

oak, *quercus, -ūs* (f.)
obey, I, *pāreo,* 2 (gov. dat.).
offer, I, *praebeo,* 2.
often, *saepĕ.*
old, *vĕtus, -ĕris.*
old, ancient, *antīquus, -a, -um*
old man, *sĕnex, sĕnis* (m.).
older, *sĕnior.*
oldest, *vĕterrĭmus.*
oldest, *nātū maxĭmus.*
once (formerly), *ōlĭm.*
order, I, *impĕro,* 1 (§ 66). [dative).
orders, I give, *impĕro,* 1 (§ 66) (gov.
our, *noster, -tra, -trum.*
out of, *ex* (with abl.).
outer, *extĕrior.* outermost, *extrēmus.*
over, *trans* (with acc.).
overcome, I, *sŭpĕro,* 1.
overcomes, he, *sŭpĕrăt.*
overpower, I, *opprĭmo, -ĕre, -essi, -essum,* 3.
owe, I, *dēbeo,* 2.

parent, *părens, -ntis* (c.).
part, *pars, -rtis* (f.).
patience, *pătientia, -ae* (f.).
peace, *pax, -ācis* (f.).
persuade, I, *persuādeo, -ēre, -āsi, -āsum,* 2 (gov. dative).
place, I, *pōno, -ĕre, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum,* 3.
place, *lŏcus, -i* (m.).
plain, *plānĭtiēs, -ei* (f.).
plan, *consĭlium, -i* (n.).
pleasant, *iūcundus, -a, -um.*
please, I, *plăceo,* 2 (gov. dat.).
pleasing, *grātus, -a, -um.*
plenty, *cōpia, -ae* (f.).
plough, I, *ăro,* 1.
poet, *poēta, -ae* (m.).
point out, I, *monstro,* 1.
poor, *pauper, -ĕris.*
powerful, *pŏtens, -ntis.*
praise, I, *laudo,* 1.
praise, *laus, laudis* (f.).
praises, he, *laudăt.*
prepare, I, *păro.* prepares, he, *părăt.*
present (adj.), *praesens, -ntis.*
prey, *praeda, -ae* (f.).
prisoner, *captīvus, -i* (m.).
prosperity, *res sĕcundae* (f. plur.).
prosperous, *prosper, -ĕra, -ĕrum.*
prudent, *prūdens, -ntis.*
public, *pūblĭcus, -a, -um.*
punish, I, *pūnio,* 4.
pupil, *discīpŭlus, -i* (m.).

quantity = plenty.
queen, *rēgina, -ae* (f.).

rampart, *vallum, -i* (n.).
rather (see R. 20 (*a*), p. 50).
ravage, I, *vasto,* 1.
read, I, *lĕgo, -ĕre, lēgi, lectum,* 3.
recall, I, *rĕvŏco,* 1.
red, *rŭber, -bra, -brum.*
region, *rĕgio, -ōnis* (f.).
reign, I, *regno,* 1.
relate, I, *narro,* 1.
restrain, I, *coerceo,* 2.
reward, *praemium, -i* (n.).
Rhine, *Rhēnus, -i.*
Rhône, *Rhŏdănus, -ī* (m.).
rich, *dīves, dīvĭtis.*
right (noun) = law, *iūs, iūris* (n.).
right (adj. as opposed to *left*), *dexter, -tra, -trum.*
river, *flŭvius, -i* (m.).
Roman, a, *Rōmānus, -i* (m.).
rosa, *rōsa, -ae* (f.).
rough, *asper, -ĕra, -ĕrum.*
rule, I, *rĕgo,* 3.
run, they, *currunt.* runs, he, *currĭt.*

sacred, *săcer, -cra, -crum.*
sad, *tristis, -e.*

safe, *tūtus, -a, -um.*
safety, *sālus, -ūtis* (f.).
sailor, *nauta, -ae* (m.).
savage, *fĕrus, -a, -um.*
say, I, *dīco, -ĕre, -xi, -ctum,* 3.
scarcely, *vix* (adv.).
Scipio, *Scīpio, -ōnis* (m.).
sea, *mărе, -is* (n.); *pĕlăgus, -i* (n.).
see, I, *vĭdeo, -ēre, vīdi, vīsum,* 2.
sees, he, *vĭdĕt.*
send, I, *mitto, -ĕre, mīsi, missum,* 3.
sends, he, *mittit.*
servant, *mĭnister, -tri* (m.).
set, I, *praebeo,* 2.
set free, I, *lībĕro,* 1.
sharp, *ăcūtus, -a, -um.*
she, *ea.*
shepherd, *pastor, -ōris* (m.).
shield, *scutum, -i* (n.).
ship, *nāvis, -is* (f.).
shore, *lītus, -ŏris* (n.).
short, *brĕvis, -e.*
shout, a, *clāmor, -ōris* (m.).
show, I, *monstro,* 1.
shower, *imber, -bris* (m.).
shows, he, *monstrăt.*
shut, see close.
sick, *aeger, -gra, -grum.*
sight (view), *conspectus, -ūs* (m.).
silver, *argentum, -i* (n.).
sister, *sŏror, -ōris* (f.).
skin, *pellis, -is* (f.).
slain, *occīsus, -a, -um.*
slave, *servus, -i* (m.).
slay, I, *occīdo, -ĕre, -īdi, -īsum,* 3.
slothful, *ignāvus, -a, -um.*
small, *parvus, -a, -um.*
smell, *ŏdor, -ōris* (m.).
snow, *nix, -nĭvis* (f.).
soil, *sŏlum, -i* (n.).
soldier, *mīles, -ĭtis* (m.).
some, *nonnullus, -a, -um.*
sometimes, *interdum.*
son, *fīlius, -i* (m.).
son-in-law, *gĕner, -ĕri* (m.). [(n.).
song, *cantus, -ūs* (m.); *carmen, -ĭnis*
soon, *mox.*
sort, *gĕnus, -ĕris* (n.).
spear, *hasta, -ae* (f.).
speech, *ōrātio, -ōnis* (f.).
speed, *cĕlĕrĭtas, -ātis* (f.).
spur, *calcar, -āris* (n.).
spy, *explōrātor, -ōris* (m.).
stag, *cervus, -i* (m.).
stand, I, *sto, -āre, stĕti, stātum,* 1.
standard-bearer, *signĭfer, -ĕri* (m.).
star, *stella, -ae* (f.).
state, *cīvĭtas, -ātis* (f.).
state, the, *rēs pūblĭca* (f.).
statue, *stătua, -ae* (f.).
step, *grădus, -ūs* (m.).
stone, *lăpis, -ĭdis* (m.).
storm, I, *expugno,* 1.
story, *histŏria, -ae* (f.).
strong, *vălĭdus, -a, -um; firmus.*
sudden, *sŭbĭtus, -a, -um.*
summer, *aestas, -ātis* (f.).
sun, *sōl, sōlis* (m.).
supreme, *suprēmus, -a, -um.*
sweet, *dulcis, -ĕ.*
swift, *cĕler, -ĕris, -ĕrĕ.*
sword, *glădius, -i* (m.).

table, *mensa, -ae* (f.).
take, I, *căpĭo, -ĕre, cēpi, captum,* 3.
take care of, I, *cūro* (gov. acc.).
tax, *vectīgal, -ālis* (n.).
teach, I, *doceo, -ēre, -ui, -ctum,* 2.
tear, *lăcrĭma, -ae* (f.).
tempest, *tempestas, -ātis* (f.).
temple, *templum, -i* (n.).
tender, *tĕner, -ĕra, -ĕrum.*
tenth, *dĕcĭmus, -a, -um.*
terrified, he is, *terrētur.*
terrifies, he, *terrĕt.*
terrify, I, *terreo,* 2.
territories, *fīnes, -ium* (m. pl.)
than, *quam.*
that (adj.), *is, ea, id.*
that (so that), *ut.*
that . . . not, *nē.*
thee, *tē.*
their, *suus* (R. 26).
them, *eos, eas, ea.*
themselves, *sē.*
then, *tunc.*
there, *ĭbi* (adv.) (see R. 12).
they, *ei, eae, ea* (§ 48).
thin, *măcer, -cra, -crum.*
thing, *rēs, -ei* (f.) (see also R. 15 (*b*)).
thorn, *spīna, -ae* (f.).
those (adj. or pro.), *ei, eae, ea.*

thou, *tu.*
threats, *mĭnae, -ārum* (f.)
thy, *tuus, -a, -um.*
timber, *mātĕrĭa, -ae* (f.).
time, *tempus, -ŏris* (n.).
timid, *tĭmĭdus, -a, -um.*
to, *ad* (gov. acc.).
to-day, *hŏdīē.*
to-morrow, *crās* (adv.).
too (see R. 20 (*a*)).
tooth, *dens, -ntis* (m.).
tower, *turris, -is* (f.).
town, *oppĭdum, -i* (n.).
train, I, *ērŭdio,* 4.
treaty, *foedus, -ĕris* (n.).
tree, *arbor, -ŏris* (f.).
Trojan, *Trōiānus, -i* (m.).
troublesome, *mŏlestus, -a, -um.*
Troy, *Trōia, -ae* (f.).

unfavourable, *adversus, -a, -um.*
unhappy, *infēlix, -īcis.*
unimportant, *lĕvis, -ĕ*
unless, *nĭsi* (R. 40).
upper, *sŭpĕrior.*
us, *nōs.*
useful, *ūtĭlis, -ĕ.*

valley, *vallis, -is* (f.).
valour, *virtus, -ūtis* (f.).
various, *vărius, -a, -um.*
very (see R. 20 (*b*)).
very many (R. 20 (*b*)), *plūrĭmī.*
vice, *vĭtium, -i* (n.).
victor, *victor, -ōris* (m.).
victory, *victōria, -ae* (f.).
vigorously, *strēnuē.*
village, *vīcus, -i* (m.).
violent, *violens, -ntis.*
virgin, *virgo, -ĭnis* (f.).
virtue, *virtus, -ūtis* (f.).
voice, *vox, vōcis* (f.).

wage, I, *gĕro, -ĕre, gessi, gestum,* 3.
walk, I, *ambŭlo,* 1.
wall, *mūrus, -i* (m.).
war, *bellum, -i* (n.).
warn, I, *admŏneo,* 2.
was, he, *ĕrat.*
water, *ăqua, -ae* (f.).
way, *vĭa, -ae* (f.).
we, *nōs.*
weapon, *tēlum, -i* (n.).
weep, I, *fleo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum,* 2.
well, *bĕnĕ* (adv.).
were, they, *erant.*
what? *quid?* (n.).
which? (pron.) *quis?* (m.).
while, *dum.*
white, *albus, -a, -um.*
who? *quis?* (m.).
why, *cūr.*
wicked, *improbus, -a, -um*
wide, *lātus, -a, -um.*
wild, *fĕrus, a, -um.*
wind, *ventus, -i* (m.).
wine, *vīnum, -i* (n.).
wing, *āla, -ae* (f.); (of army), *cornu, -ūs* (n.).
winter, *hiems, -ĕmis* (f.).
wisdom, *săpientia, -ae* (f.).
wise, *săpiens, -ntis.*
with, *cum* (gov. ablative).
witness, *testis, -is* (m.).
wolf, *lŭpus, -i* (m.).
woman, *mŭli-er, -ĕris* (f.); *fēmĭnă, -ae* (f.) (= female).
wood, *silva, -ae* (f.) (= forest); *mātĕrĭă* (f.) (= timber).
wooden, *ligneus, -a, -um.*
word, *verbum, -i* (n.).
work, *ŏpus, -ĕris* (n.).
work, I, *lăbōro,* 1.
workman, *făber, -bri* (m.).
worse, *pēior.* worst, *pessĭmus*
worthless, *nēquam* (indecl.).
wound, a, *vulnus, -ĕris* (n.).
wound, I, *vulnĕro,* 1.
wounds, he, *vulnĕrăt.*
wretched, *mĭser, -ĕra, -ĕrum.*
write, I, *scrībo, -ĕre, -psi, -ptum,* 3.

year, *annus, -i* (m.).
you, *vōs.*
young man, *iŭvĕnis, -is* (m.), § 29.
younger, *iunior.*
youngest, *nātū mĭnĭmus.*
your, *vester, -tra, -trum.*

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY THE UNIVERSITY PRESS ABERDEEN

Act
Sub of Dist -

An Actue ~~one~~ verb is one where the subject is the doner of action
A Poss. Verb is one where the subject of the verb is the sufferer of the action

Omnis